



ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1

Directives ISO/CEI, Partie 1

**Consolidated ISO
Supplement –
Procedures specific to
ISO**

Third edition, 2012
(based on the ninth edition of
the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1)

© ISO/IEC 2012

**International Organization for
Standardization**

1, ch.de la Voie-Creuse
Case postale 56
CH-1211 Geneva 20
Telephone: +41 22 749 0111
Telefax: +41 22 733 3430
E-mail: central@iso.org
Web: <http://www.iso.org>

International Electrotechnical Commission

3, rue de Varembé
Case postale 131
CH-1211 Geneva 20
Telephone: +41 22 919 0211
Telefax: +41 22 919 0300
E-mail: jnmail@iec.ch
Web: <http://www.iec.ch>

Field Code Changed

Field Code Changed

Field Code Changed

Field Code Changed

© ISO/IEC 2014²

All rights reserved. It is permitted to download this electronic file, to make a copy and to print out the content for the purpose of preparing ISO and IEC documents only. You may not copy or "mirror" the file, or any part of it, for any other purpose without permission in writing from the publishers.

Contents

Page

INTRODUCTION TO THE CONSOLIDATED ISO SUPPLEMENT	viii
Foreword	x
1 Organizational structure and responsibilities for the technical work	14
1.1 Role of the technical management board	14
1.2 Advisory groups to the technical management board	14
1.3 Joint technical work	15
1.4 Role of the Chief Executive Officer	15
1.5 Establishment of technical committees	15
1.6 Establishment of subcommittees	17
1.7 Participation in the work of technical committees and subcommittees	18
1.8 Chairmen of technical committees and subcommittees	19
1.9 Secretariats of technical committees and subcommittees	20
1.10 Project committees	23
1.11 Editing committees	23
1.12 Working groups	24
1.13 Groups having advisory functions within a committee	25
1.14 Ad hoc groups	25
1.15 Liaison between technical committees	26
1.16 Liaison between ISO and IEC	26
1.17 Liaison with other organizations	26
2 Development of International Standards	28
2.1 The project approach	28
2.2 Preliminary stage	34
2.3 Proposal stage	34
2.4 Preparatory stage	36
2.5 Committee stage	37
2.6 Enquiry stage	39
2.7 Approval stage	41
2.8 Publication stage	42
2.9 Maintenance of standards	42
2.10 Technical corrigenda and amendments	45
2.11 Maintenance agencies	46
2.12 Registration authorities	46
2.13 Copyright	46
2.14 Reference to patented items (see also Annex I)	47
3 Development of other deliverables	47
3.1 Technical Specifications	47
3.2 Publicly Available Specifications (PAS)	48
3.3 Technical Reports	49
4 Meetings	49
4.1 General	49
4.2 Procedure for calling a meeting	49
4.3 Languages at meetings	50
4.4 Cancellation of meetings	50
4.5 Distribution of documents	50

5	Appeals	51
5.1	General	51
5.2	Appeal against a subcommittee decision	51
5.3	Appeal against a technical committee decision	51
5.4	Appeal against a technical management board decision	52
5.5	Progress of work during an appeal process	52
Annex A	(normative) Guides	54
A.1	Introduction	54
A.2	Proposal stage	54
A.3	Preparatory stage	54
A.4	Committee stage	54
A.5	Enquiry stage	54
A.6	Publication stage	55
A.7	Withdrawal of a Guide	55
Annex B	(normative) ISO/IEC procedures for liaison and work allocation	56
B.1	Introduction	56
B.2	General considerations	56
B.3	Establishing new technical committees	56
B.4	Coordinating and allocating work between ISO and IEC technical committees	57
Annex C	(normative) Justification of proposals for the establishment of standards	59
C.1	General	59
C.2	Terms and definitions	59
C.3	General principles	59
C.4	Elements to be clarified when proposing a new field of technical activity or a new work item	60
Annex D	(normative) Resources of secretariats and qualifications of secretaries	73
D.1	Terms and definitions	73
D.2	Resources of a secretariat	73
D.3	Requirements of a secretary	74
Annex E	(normative) General policy on the use of languages	75
E.1	Expressing and communicating ideas in an international environment	75
E.2	The use of languages in the technical work	75
E.3	International Standards	75
E.4	Other publications developed by technical committees	76
E.5	Documents for technical committee and subcommittee meetings	76
E.6	Documents prepared in languages other than English or French	76
E.7	Technical meetings	77
Annex F	(normative) Options for development of a project	78
F.1	Simplified diagram of options	78
F.2	"Fast-track procedure"	79
Annex G	(normative) Maintenance agencies	80
Annex H	(normative) Registration authorities	81
Annex I	(normative) Guideline for Implementation of the Common Patent Policy for ITU-T/ITU-R/ISO/IEC	82
Part I	– Common guidelines	83
I.1	Purpose	83
I.2	Explanation of terms	83

I.3	Patent disclosure	84
I.4	Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration Form	84
I.4.1	The purpose of the Declaration Form	84
I.4.2	Contact information	85
I.5	Conduct of meetings	85
I.6	Patent Information database	86
I.7	Assignment or Transfer of Patent Rights	86
Part II	– Organization-specific provisions	87
II.1	Specific provisions for ITU	87
II.2	Specific provisions for ISO and IEC	88
	PATENT STATEMENT AND LICENSING DECLARATION FORM FOR ITU-T or ITU-R RECOMMENDATION ISO or IEC DELIVERABLE	90
	GENERAL PATENT STATEMENT AND LICENSING DECLARATION FORM FOR ITU-T or ITU-R RECOMMENDATION	94
Annex J	(normative) Formulating scopes of technical committees and subcommittees	96
J.1	Introduction	96
J.2	Formulation of scopes	96
J.3	Basic scope	96
J.4	Exclusions	96
J.5	Scopes of committees related to products	97
J.6	Scopes of committees not related to products	97
Annex K	(normative) Project committees	98
K.1	Proposal stage	98
K.2	Establishment of a project committee	98
K.3	First meeting of a project committee	99
K.4	Preparatory stage	99
K.5	Committee, enquiry, approval and publication stages	99
K.6	Disbanding of a project committee	99
K.7	Maintenance of standard(s) prepared by a project committee	99
ANNEXES	APPLICABLE TO ISO ONLY	100
Annex SA	(normative) Basic reference works and information resources	101
SA.1	Introduction	101
SA.2	Works considered to be essential	101
SA.3	Information resources	102
SA.4	Other	102
Annex SB	(normative) Document distribution	103
SB.1	Document distribution	103
SB.2	Electronic notifications of document delivery	103
Annex SC	(normative) Strategic business plans	105
SC.1	Objectives of a TC strategic business plan	105
SC.2	Development tools and additional guidance	105
SC.3	Procedure for the development of a strategic business plan	105
Annex SD	(normative) Matrix presentation of project stages	107
Annex SE	(normative) Numbering of documents	108
SE.1	Working documents (including committee drafts)	108

SE.2 Working drafts (WD), committee drafts (CD), draft International Standards (DIS), final draft International Standards (FDIS) and International Standards	109
Annex SF (normative) Hosting meetings	111
SF.1 Who may host an ISO meeting?	111
SF.2 Sponsorship of meetings	111
SF.3 Proposing or withdrawing support as a meeting host	111
SF.4 Meeting locations	112
SF.5 Facilities to provide at meetings	112
SF.6 Interpretation facilities at meetings	112
SF.7 Welcoming activities and social events	113
SF.8 Fees for delegates at ISO meetings	113
SF.9 Media participation policy	113
SF.10 Tape recording at ISO meetings	115
Annex SG (normative) Second (and subsequent) language texts for ISO standards	116
SG.1 Introduction	116
SG.2 English and French	116
SG.3 Russian	117
SG.4 Other languages	117
SG.5 Single-language versions	117
SG.6 Translations	117
Annex SH (normative) Procedures for the standardization of graphical symbols	118
SH.1 Introduction	118
SH.2 All graphical symbols except those for use in technical product documentation	119
SH.3 Graphical symbols for use in technical product documentation (tpd) (ISO/TC 10)	122
Annex SI (normative) Procedure for the development of International Workshop Agreements (IWA)	124
SI.1 Proposals to develop IWAs	124
SI.2 Review of proposals	124
SI.3 Announcement	125
SI.4 Workshop information	125
SI.5 Participation	125
SI.6 Workshop procedures and management oversight	126
SI.7 Appeals	126
SI.8 Workshop deliverables and publication	127
SI.9 Review of IWAs	127
SI.10 Checklist to estimate costs associated with hosting an ISO IWA Workshop (WS)	127
Annex SJ (normative) Forms	130
Annex SK (normative) Procedure for the development and maintenance of standards in database format	131
SK.1 Introduction	131
SK.2 Procedure	131
SK.3 Terms for general use	139
SK.4 Terms for the status identification of Change Requests	141
SK.5 Terms for the status identification of items	141
Annex SL (normative) Proposals for management system standards	143

SL.1 General	143
SL.2 Obligation to submit a JS	143
SL.3 Cases where no JS have been submitted	143
SL.4 Applicability of Annex SL	144
SL.5 Terms and definitions	144
SL.6 General principles	145
SL.7 Justification study process and criteria	145
SL.8 Guidance on the development process and structure of an MSS	146
Appendix 1 (normative) Justification criteria questions	150
Appendix 2 (normative) High level structure, identical core text and common terms and core definitions for use in Management Systems Standards	154
Appendix 3 (normative) High level structure, identical core text, common terms and core definitions	156
Appendix 4 (informative) Guidance on high level structure, identical core text, common terms and core definitions	166
Annex SM (normative) Global relevance of ISO technical work and publications	168
SM.1 Introduction	168
SM.2 Terms and definitions	168
SM.3 Principles	169
Annex SN (normative) Policy concerning normative references in ISO publications	171
SN.1 General	171
SN.2 Preference to be given to ISO and IEC publications	172
SN.3 Normative references to publications by other organizations	172
Annex SO (informative) Principles for developing ISO and IEC Standards related to or supporting public policy initiatives	174
SO.1 Background Context	174
SO.2 Principles	174
SO.3 Implementation	175
Annex SP (normative) Environmental management – Sector, aspect and element policy	176
Annex SQ (normative) Selection criteria for people leading the technical work	178
SQ.1 Obligations of member bodies	178
SQ.2 Resources available to fill gaps in skills or knowledge	178
SQ.3 Selection Criteria for people leading the technical work	178
Annex SR (normative) Statements intended to limit the purpose or use of deliverables	182
SR.1 Principles	182
SR.2 Further information regarding statements in relation to barriers or obstacles to trade	182
SR.3 Further information regarding statements in relation to contractual obligations or government regulation	183
SR.4 Requests for exceptions	183
Reference documents	184

INTRODUCTION TO THE CONSOLIDATED ISO SUPPLEMENT

0.1 What is the Consolidated ISO Supplement?

The ISO/IEC Directives define the basic procedures to be followed in the development of International Standards and other publications. This Supplement (the Consolidated ISO Supplement) (also referred to as the "ISO Supplement") describes contains procedures specific to ISO.

Part 1 of the ISO/IEC Directives, together with this Consolidated ISO Supplement, provide the complete set of procedural rules to be followed by ISO committees. There are, however, other documents to which reference may need to be made. In particular, for committees cooperating with CEN under the Agreement on technical cooperation between ISO and CEN (Vienna Agreement), reference should be made to the Guidelines for Chairmen and Secretariats on the implementation of the Vienna Agreement. Guidelines for TC/SC Chairmen and Secretariats for implementation of the Agreement on technical cooperation between ISO and CEN.

Attention is also drawn to the fact that ~~these procedures do not apply to~~ ISO/IEC JTC 1 Information technology has adopted ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1 together with the for which reference should be made to the ISO/IEC Directives, Procedures for the technical work of ISO/IEC JTC 1 on Information technology. JTC 1 Supplement.

Additionally, it is recalled that, following a decision of the ISO Council, a new type of document, the International Workshop Agreement (IWA), has been introduced. Such documents are developed outside of ISO committee structures. The rules for developing IWA are given in Annex SJ.

Finally, it is to be noted that ISO also publishes Technology Trends Assessments (TTA). Such documents may be developed by pre-standardization research organizations with which ISO has a cooperation agreement, or may be developed in pre-standardization workshops. In each case, the TMB approves publication of a TTA.

Formatted: Font: Italic

0.2 The structure of the Consolidated ISO Supplement

The clause structure of the Consolidated ISO Supplement follows that of Part 1 of the ISO/IEC Directives ~~to the first subclause level, e.g. to the level of 1.7, 2.1, etc.~~ 1, in order to assist in cross-relating the texts, a box with the specific ISO clauses has been added under the clauses of the ISO/IEC Directives. If there ~~are~~ is no box under a particular clause, comments (see, for example subclause 1.12), it means that there are no ISO-specific requirements or recommendations.

~~Tables and~~ the annexes beginning with "S" in the Consolidated ISO Supplement are all unique to ~~this Supplement and ISO and~~ do not follow the order in the ISO/IEC Directives. Where a reference in an ISO annex (i.e. beginning with "S") is made to an annex in the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1, this is explicitly indicated by an explicit reference.

The following is a list of the principal changes with respect to the second edition of the ISO Supplement. The track change version of this third edition should be consulted for the details of the changes made.

- a) addition of requirements regarding committee specific procedures (see Foreword, clause f)
- b) clarification that abstentions are excluded when votes are counted (see Foreword, clause g)
- c) clarification regarding the participation of correspondent and subscriber members (see 1.7)
- d) clarification regarding the treatment of comments from liaisons (see 1.17.2.2)
- e) addition of the requirement to seek out the participation of all parties at the beginning of the development of a work item (see 1.17.3.3)
- f) clarification that any graphical symbols must be submitted to the relevant ISO committee responsible for registration of graphical symbols (see 2.5.1)
- g) clarification that committees are required to respond to all comments received at the CD and

Formatted: Font: Italic

Formatted: No underline

Formatted: Font: (Asian) Japanese, Not Expanded by / Condensed by

Formatted: Font: (Asian) Japanese, Not Expanded by / Condensed by

Formatted: Font: (Asian) Japanese, Not Expanded by / Condensed by

Formatted: List Paragraph, Numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: a, b, c, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 1.27 cm

DIS stages (see 2.5.3 and 2.6.5)

- a)h) clarifications in the concept of "consensus" (see 2.5.6)
- i) update of the Table S1 – Timing of systematic reviews (see 2.9)
- j) change to *Option 2: Amendment or revision (Retention, with change/s) in Interpretation of ballot results for International Standards* (see 2.9.3.2)
- k) change to *Option 3: Withdrawal in Interpretation of ballot results for International Standard* (see 2.9.3.2)
- l) clarification that clause 2.3 applies to PAS (see 3.2)
- m) deletion of ISO Memento (which has been discontinued) from Annex SA (see SA.1)
- n) clarification in the table summarizing the distribution of documents to those involved in standards development (see table under SB.2)
- o) expansion of the policy for media participation (see SF.9)
- p) clarification that Annex SK – *Procedure for the development and maintenance of standards in database format* applies only to databases managed by ISO Central Secretariat (see SK.1)
- q) extensive changes to Annex SL – *Proposals for management system standards*
- r) simplification of Annex SN – *Policy concerning normative references in ISO publications*
- b) s) addition of new Annex SP – *Environmental management – Sector, aspect and element policy*
- t) addition of new Annex SQ – *Selection criteria for people leading the technical work*
- u) addition of new Annex SR – *Statements intended to limit the purpose or use of deliverables*
- v) addition of new **Error! Reference source not found.** – *Links to important guidance documents*

Formatted: Font: Italic

Formatted: Font: Italic

Formatted: Font: Italic

Formatted: Font: Italic

Formatted: Font: Italic

Formatted: List Paragraph, Numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: a, b, c, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 1.27 cm

Formatted: Font: Italic

Formatted: Font: Italic

Formatted: Font: Italic

Formatted: Font: Italic

Formatted: Font: Italic

Formatted: Font: Italic

Formatted: Numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: a, b, c, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 1.27 cm

Formatted: Font: Italic

Formatted: Not Expanded by / Condensed by

Formatted: Indent: Left: 1.27 cm, No bullets or numbering

Foreword

The **ISO/IEC Directives** are published in two parts:

- Part 1: Procedures for the technical work
- Part 2: Rules for the structure and drafting of International Standards

Furthermore, ISO, IEC and ISO/IEC Joint Technical Committee (JTC) 1 have published independent supplements to Part 1, which include procedures that are not common.

This part sets out the procedures to be followed within the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) and the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) in carrying out their technical work: primarily the development and maintenance of International Standards through the activities of technical committees and their subsidiary bodies.

ISO, IEC and ISO/IEC JTC 1 provide additional guidance and tools to all those concerned with the preparation of technical documents on their respective websites (www.iso.org/directives; http://www.iec.ch/members_experts/refdocs and <http://www.jtc1.org>).

This ~~ninth~~^{eighth} edition incorporates changes agreed by the respective technical management boards since publication of the ~~eighth~~^{seventh} edition in 2011⁰⁹. Procedures which are not common to the ISO/IEC Directives are published separately in the ISO Supplement (also referred to as the Consolidated ISO Supplement), the IEC Supplement or the ISO/IEC JTC 1 Supplement, respectively. The Supplements are to be used in conjunction with this document.

Formatted: Not Highlight

The following is a list of the principal changes with respect to the previous edition—~~are as follows~~: The track changes version of this ninth edition should be consulted for the details of the changes made.

Formatted: Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt

- a) addition of Joint Project Committees (JPC) (see 1.3.2);
- b) addition of project committee in the list of those who may submit proposals for work in new fields (see 1.5.3);
- c) addition to the requirements for proposals for new fields of technical activity – further to the recommendations of the ISO/IEC Market Relevance Task Force or "MRTF" (see 1.5.4, 1.5.5 and 1.5.6);
- d) clarification of the actions to be taken where P-members fail to participate actively (see 1.7.4);
- e) addition to the requirements for a project committee wishing to be transformed into a technical committee (see 1.10);
- f) addition to the requirements for new work item proposals – further to the recommendations of the MRTF (see 2.3.4);
- a)g) clarification of the acceptance criteria for new work item proposals – further to the recommendations of the MRTF (see 2.3.5);
- h) for ISO, reduction of voting period at the enquiry stage (see 2.6.1);
- i) for ISO, addition that FDIS is optional where the approval criteria in 2.6.3 are met (see 2.6.4);
- j) clarification and limitations for the issuance of technical corrigenda and amendments (see 2.10);
- k) significant modifications to Annex C - further to the recommendations of the MRTF;
- l) editorial update in Annex D (see f);
- m) reference to the ISO and IEC Supplements for the acceptance of Publicly Available Specifications (see F.1);
- n) modifications to the Guidelines for Implementation of the Common Patent Policy for ITU-T/ITU-R/ISO/IEC (see Annex I);
- o) clarification of the responsibility for the maintenance of standard(s) where the project committee has been transformed into a technical committee (see K.7);
- p) addition of subcommittee in clause F.2.1.1 (see Annex F).

Formatted: Indent: Left: 1.27 cm, No bullets or numbering

Formatted: Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt

- a) ~~addition of references to the JTC 1 Supplement where appropriate;~~
- b) ~~addition of information on the handling of persistently inactive working group experts (see 4.12.3);~~
- c) ~~deletion of IEC specific information on project teams;~~
- d) ~~consolidation of information on the review of liaisons with other organizations eliminating the previous duplication of information (see 1.17.1);~~
- e) ~~clarification of the validity of PAS (see 3.2.4);~~
- f) ~~addition of the need for host organizations of technical committee and sub-committee meetings to provide information on access to meeting facilities i.e. availability of ramps, public transport etc. (see 4.2.2);~~

Formatted: Space After: 0 pt

Field Code Changed

Field Code Changed

Field Code Changed

Field Code Changed

These procedures have been established by ISO and IEC in recognition of the need for International Standards to be cost-effective and timely, as well as widely recognized and generally applied. In order to attain these objectives, the procedures are based on the following concepts.

a) Modern technology and programme management

Within the framework of these procedures, the work may be accelerated and the task of experts and secretariats facilitated both by progressive introduction of new technologies and modern programme management methods.

b) Consensus

Consensus, which requires the resolution of substantial objections, is an essential procedural principle and a necessary condition for the preparation of International Standards that will be accepted and widely used. Although it is necessary for the technical work to progress speedily, sufficient time is required before the approval stage for the discussion, negotiation and resolution of significant technical disagreements.

For further details on the principle of "consensus", see 2.5.6.

c) Discipline

National bodies need to ensure discipline with respect to deadlines and timetables in order to avoid long and uncertain periods of "dead time". Similarly, to avoid re-discussion, national bodies have the responsibility of ensuring that their technical standpoint is established taking account of all interests concerned at national level, and that this standpoint is made clear at an early stage of the work rather than, for example, at the final (approval) stage. Moreover, national bodies need to recognize that substantial comments tabled at meetings are counter-productive, since no opportunity is available for other delegations to carry out the necessary consultations at home, without which rapid achievement of consensus will be difficult.

d) Cost-effectiveness

These procedures take account of the total cost of the operation. The concept of "total cost" includes direct expenditure by national bodies, expenditure by the offices in Geneva (funded mainly by the dues of national bodies), travel costs and the value of the time spent by experts in working groups and committees, at both national and international level.

e) Global relevance of ISO International Standards

It is ISO's aim and expectation that each of its International Standards represents a worldwide consensus and responds to global market needs. In order to achieve this aim, it has been recognized that special measures are needed in particular to ensure that the needs of developing

countries are taken into account in ISO's technical work. One such measure is the inclusion of specific provisions for "twinning", i.e. partnerships between developed and developing countries, in this ISO Supplement to the ISO/IEC Directives. (See 1.7, 1.8.1, 1.8.3, 1.9.2, 1.9.3, 1.9.4 and 1.14.)

Whilst these provisions are necessarily limited to the technical work, "twinning" may occur at multiple levels, in particular to assist in capacity building in developing countries of their standardization, conformity assessment and IT infrastructures, with the aim of their ultimately being self-sufficient in carrying out their activities.

f) Committee specific procedures

The ISO/IEC Directives (and Consolidated ISO Supplement) have been developed based on many years of experience with standards development across many committees and fields. Therefore, committees should have little, if any, need to develop committee specific procedures (CSP) (which include committee decisions which are de facto procedures). Where a committee feels that the ISO/IEC Directives (or Consolidated ISO Supplement) do not adequately address a specific issue, the committee should submit a request for a revision/expansion of the ISO/IEC Directives (or Consolidated ISO Supplement) to the ISO Technical Management Board rather than develop a committee specific procedure. In cases where a committee feels the ISO/IEC Directives (or Consolidated ISO Supplement) do not at all address a specific operational issue, the committee may develop a CSP, including a clear rationale for the procedure, and submit it for the consideration of the ISO Technical Management Board who will make every effort to respond quickly to the request.

g) Exclusion of abstentions in counting votes

In all votes throughout the various stages of development of a deliverable, abstentions are excluded when the votes are counted.

Formatted: Font: Bold

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, Bold

NOTE 1 Wherever appropriate in this document, for the sake of brevity the following terminology has been adopted to represent similar or identical concepts within ISO and IEC.

Term	ISO	IEC
national body	member Body (MB)	National Committee (NC)
technical management board (TMB)	Technical Management Board (ISO/TMB)	Standardization Management Board (SMB)
Chief Executive Officer (CEO)	Secretary-General	General Secretary
office of the CEO	Central Secretariat (CS)	Central Office (CO)
council board	Council	Council Board (CB)
advisory group	Technical Advisory Group (TAG)	Advisory Committee
For other concepts, ISO/IEC Guide 2 applies.		

NOTE 2 In addition the following abbreviations are used in this document.

JTAB Joint Technical Advisory Board
JCG Joint Coordination Group
JTC Joint Technical Committee
JWG joint working group
TC technical committee
SC subcommittee
PC project committee
WG working group
PWI preliminary work item
NP new work item proposal
WD working draft
CD committee draft

DIS draft International Standard (ISO)
CDV committee draft for vote (IEC)
FDIS final draft International Standard
PAS Publicly Available Specification
TS Technical Specification
TR Technical Report

1 Organizational structure and responsibilities for the technical work

1.1 Role of the technical management board

The technical management board of the respective organization is responsible for the overall management of the technical work and in particular for:

- a) establishment of technical committees;
- b) appointment of chairmen of technical committees;
- c) allocation or re-allocation of secretariats of technical committees and, in some cases, subcommittees;
- d) approval of titles, scopes and programmes of work of technical committees;
- e) ratification of the establishment and dissolution of subcommittees by technical committees;
- f) allocation of priorities, if necessary, to particular items of technical work;
- g) coordination of the technical work, including assignment of responsibility for the development of standards regarding subjects of interest to several technical committees, or needing coordinated development; to assist it in this task, the technical management board may establish advisory groups of experts in the relevant fields to advise it on matters of basic, sectoral and cross-sectoral coordination, coherent planning and the need for new work;
- h) monitoring the progress of the technical work with the assistance of the office of the CEO, and taking appropriate action;
- i) reviewing the need for, and planning of, work in new fields of technology;
- j) maintenance of the ISO/IEC Directives and other rules for the technical work;
- k) consideration of matters of principle raised by national bodies, and of appeals concerning decisions on new work item proposals, on committee drafts, on enquiry drafts or on final draft International Standards.

NOTE Explanations of the terms "new work item proposal", "committee draft", "enquiry draft" and "final draft International Standard" are given in Clause 2.

1.2 Advisory groups to the technical management board

1.2.1 A group having advisory functions in the sense of 1.1 g) may be established

- a) by one of the technical management boards;
- b) jointly by the two technical management boards.

NOTE In IEC certain such groups are designated as Advisory Committees.

1.2.2 A proposal to establish such a group shall include recommendations regarding its terms of reference and constitution, bearing in mind the requirement for sufficient representation of affected interests while at the same time limiting its size as far as possible in order to ensure its efficient operation. For example, it may be decided that its members be only the chairmen and secretaries of the technical committees concerned. In every case, the TMB(s) shall decide the criteria to be applied and shall appoint the members.

Any changes proposed by the group to its terms of reference, composition or, where appropriate, working methods shall be submitted to the technical management boards for approval.

1.2.3 The tasks allocated to such a group may include the making of proposals relating to the drafting or harmonization of publications (in particular International Standards, Technical Specifications, Publicly Available Specifications and Technical Reports), but shall not include the preparation of such documents unless specifically authorized by the TMB(s).

1.2.4 Any document being prepared with a view to publication shall be developed in accordance with the procedural principles given in Annex A.

1.2.5 The results of such a group shall be presented in the form of recommendations to the TMB(s). The recommendations may include proposals for the establishment of a working group (see

1.12) or a joint working group (see 1.12.6) for the preparation of publications. Such working groups shall operate within the relevant technical committee, if any.

1.2.6 The internal documents of a group having advisory functions shall be distributed to its members only, with a copy to the office(s) of the CEO(s).

1.2.7 Such a group shall be disbanded once its specified tasks have been completed, or if it is subsequently decided that its work can be accomplished by normal liaison mechanisms (see 1.16).

1.3 Joint technical work

1.3.1 Joint Technical Advisory Board (JTAB)

The JTAB has the task of avoiding or eliminating possible or actual overlapping in the technical work of ISO and IEC and acts when one of the two organizations feels a need for joint planning. The JTAB deals only with those cases that it has not been possible to resolve at lower levels by existing procedures. (See Annex B.) Such cases may cover questions of planning and procedures as well as technical work.

Decisions of the JTAB are communicated to both organizations for immediate implementation. They shall not be subject to appeal for at least 3 years.

1.3.2 Joint Technical Committees (JTC) and Joint Project Committees (JPC)

~~Joint technical committees may be established by a common decision of the ISO/TMB and IEC~~

1.3.2.1 JTC and JPC may be established by a common decision of the ISO/TMB and IEC/SMB, or by a decision of the JTAB.

1.3.2.2 For JPC, one organization has the administrative responsibility. This shall be decided by mutual agreement between the two organizations.

Participation is based on the one member/country, one vote principle.

Where two national bodies in the same country elect to participate in a JPC then one shall be identified as having the administrative responsibility. The national body with the administrative responsibility has the responsibility of coordinating activities in their country, including the circulation of documents, commenting and voting.

Otherwise the normal procedures for project committees are followed (see 1.10).

~~SMB, or by a decision of the JTAB.~~

1.4 Role of the Chief Executive Officer

The Chief Executive Officer of the respective organization is responsible, *inter alia*, for implementing the ISO/IEC Directives and other rules for the technical work. For this purpose, the office of the CEO arranges all contacts between the technical committees, the council board and the technical management board.

Deviations from the procedures set out in the present document shall not be made without the authorization of the Chief Executive Officers of ISO or IEC, or the authorization of the ISO/IEC Joint Technical Advisory Board (JTAB).

1.5 Establishment of technical committees

1.5.1 Technical committees are established and dissolved by the technical management board.

1.5.2 The technical management board may transform an existing subcommittee into a new technical committee, following consultation with the technical committee concerned.

1.5.3 A proposal for work in a new field of technical activity which appears to require the establishment of a new technical committee may be made in the respective organization by

Formatted: Font: Bold

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0 cm

Formatted: Font: Bold

- a national body;
- a technical committee or subcommittee;
- a project committee;
- a policy level committee;
- the technical management board;
- the Chief Executive Officer;
- a body responsible for managing a certification system operating under the auspices of the organization;
- another international organization with national body membership.

1.5.4 The proposal shall be made using the appropriate form (see Annex SJ in the Consolidated ISO Supplement to the ISO/IEC Directives and http://www.iec.ch/standardsdev/resources/docpreparation/forms_templates/), which covers

- a) the proposer;
- b) the subject proposed;
- c) the scope of the work envisaged and the proposed initial programme of work;
- d) a justification for the proposal;
- e) if applicable, a survey of similar work undertaken in other bodies;
- f) any liaisons deemed necessary with other bodies.

For additional informational details to be included in the proposals for new work, see Annex C.

The form shall be submitted to the office of the CEO, who shall ensure that the proposal is properly developed in accordance with ISO and IEC requirements (see Annex C) and provides sufficient information to support informed decision making by national bodies.

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

If it is questionable whether proposal documentation provides sufficient information, the proposal shall be returned to the proposer for further development before circulation for voting. This is intended as a quality control process only, and shall not reflect any value judgment about the market relevance or need for the proposed standard(s).

If a proposal is returned to the proposer for further development, the proposer has the right to request that its proposal be circulated for voting as originally presented and without further development.

For details relating to justification of the proposal, see Annex C-~~C~~.4.

1.5.5 The Chief Executive Officer shall assess the relationship of the proposal to existing work, and may consult interested parties, including the ~~c~~Chairman of the technical management board or chairmen of committees conducting related existing work, immediately after such a proposal is received. If necessary, an ad hoc group may be established to examine the proposal.

Any comments and recommendations by the Chief Executive Officer resulting from the consultations shall be added to the proposal form. These comments and recommendations shall not include value judgments about the market relevance or need for the proposed standard(s).

1.5.5 In some instances, the ~~ISO T~~technical ~~M~~management ~~B~~board may consider it appropriate to carry out an informal exploratory enquiry.

In the case of a proposal to establish a technical committee to prepare management system standards, see Annex SL.

Technical committees are established by the ~~ISO~~TMB on a provisional basis. Within 18 months, provisionally established technical committees are required to prepare a strategic business plan for review by the ~~ISO~~TMB (see Annex SC). The committees are formally established by the ~~ISO~~TMB at the time of

acceptance of the business plan. This does not preclude the initiation of standardization projects during this 18 month period.

1.5.6 The proposal shall be circulated by the office of the CEO to all national bodies of the respective organization (ISO or IEC), asking whether or not they

- a) support the establishment of a new technical committee providing a statement justifying their decision, and
- b) intend to participate actively (see 1.7.1) in the work of the new technical committee.

The proposal shall also be submitted to the other organization (IEC or ISO) for comment and for agreement (see Annex B).

The replies to the proposal shall be made using the appropriate form within 3 months after circulation. Regarding 1.5.6a) above, if no such statement is provided, the positive or negative vote of a national body will not be registered and considered.

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

1.5.7 The technical management board evaluates the replies and either

- decides the establishment of a new technical committee, provided that
 - 1) a 2/3 majority of the national bodies voting are in favour of the proposal, and
 - 2) at least 5 national bodies have expressed their intention to participate actively,
 and allocates the secretariat (see 1.9.1), or
- assigns the work to an existing technical committee, subject to the same criteria of acceptance.

1.5.8 Technical committees shall be numbered in sequence in the order in which they are established. If a technical committee is dissolved, its number shall not be allocated to another technical committee.

1.5.9 As soon as possible after the decision to establish a new technical committee, the necessary liaisons shall be arranged (see 1.15 to 1.17).

1.5.10 A new technical committee shall agree on its title and scope as soon as possible after its establishment, preferably by correspondence.

The scope is a statement precisely defining the limits of the work of a technical committee.

The definition of the scope of a technical committee shall begin with the words "Standardization of ..." or "Standardization in the field of ..." and shall be drafted as concisely as possible.

For recommendations on scopes, see Annex J.

The agreed title and scope shall be submitted by the Chief Executive Officer to the technical management board for approval.

1.5.11 The technical management board or a technical committee may propose a modification of the latter's title and/or scope. The modified wording shall be established by the technical committee for approval by the technical management board.

1.6 Establishment of subcommittees

1.6.1 Subcommittees are established and dissolved by a 2/3 majority decision of the P-members of the parent committee voting, subject to ratification by the technical management board. A subcommittee may be established only on condition that a national body has expressed its readiness to undertake the secretariat.

1.6.2 At the time of its establishment, a subcommittee shall comprise at least 5 members of the parent technical committee having expressed their intention to participate actively (see 0) in the work of the subcommittee.

1.6.3 Subcommittees of a technical committee shall be designated in sequence in the order in which they are established. If a subcommittee is dissolved, its designation shall not be allocated to another subcommittee, unless the dissolution is part of a complete restructuring of the technical committee.

1.6.4 The title and scope of a subcommittee shall be defined by the parent technical committee and shall be within the defined scope of the parent technical committee.

1.6.5 The secretariat of the parent technical committee shall inform the office of the CEO of the decision to establish a subcommittee, using the appropriate form. The office of the CEO shall submit the form to the technical management board for ratification of the decision.

1.6.6 As soon as possible after ratification of the decision to establish a new subcommittee, any liaisons deemed necessary with other bodies shall be arranged (see 1.15 to 1.17).

1.7 Participation in the work of technical committees and subcommittees

In recognition of the fact that member bodies in developing countries often lack the resources to participate in all committees which may be carrying out work which is important for their national economy, such member bodies are invited to establish twinning arrangements with P-members of relevant committees. Under such arrangements, the P-member concerned shall undertake to ensure that the views and needs of the member body with which it is twinned are communicated to and taken into consideration by the responsible ISO committee. The twinned member body shall consequently also have the status of P-member (see note) and be registered as a twinned P-member by the Central Secretariat.

NOTE It is left to the member bodies concerned to determine the most effective way of implementing twinning. This may include for example the P-member sponsoring an expert from the twinned member body to participate in committee meetings or to act as an expert in a working group, or it may involve the P-member seeking the views of the twinned member body on particular agenda items/documents and conveying those comments to the committee, including casting a vote on behalf of the twinned member body during meetings. In order to ensure the greatest possible transparency, the twinned member body should provide its positions in writing not only to the twinning partner, but also to the committee secretariat, who should verify that proxy votes cast on behalf of the twinned member are consistent with its written positions.

The details of all twinning arrangements shall be notified to the secretariat and chairman of the committee concerned, to the committee members and to ISO/CS to ensure the greatest possible transparency.

A P-member shall twin with only one other member body in any particular committee.

The twinned member shall cast its own vote on all issues referred to the committee for vote by correspondence.

Consistent with the ISO Statutes and Rules of Procedure, correspondent and subscriber members are not eligible for P-memberships. Correspondent members of ISO may register as ~~Observer-members~~ of committees but do not have the right to submit comments.

1.7.1 All national bodies have the right to participate in the work of technical committees and subcommittees.

In order to achieve maximum efficiency and the necessary discipline in the work, each national body shall clearly indicate to the office of the CEO, with regard to each technical committee or subcommittee, if it intends

- to participate actively in the work, with an obligation to vote on all questions formally submitted for voting within the technical committee or subcommittee, on new work item proposals, enquiry drafts and final draft International Standards, and to contribute to meetings (**P-members**), or
- to follow the work as an observer, and therefore to receive committee documents and to have the right to submit comments and to attend meetings (**O-members**).

A national body may choose to be neither P-member nor O-member of a given committee, in which case it will have neither the rights nor the obligations indicated above with regard to the work of that committee. Nevertheless, all national bodies irrespective of their status within a technical committee

or subcommittee have the right to vote on enquiry drafts (see 2.6) and on final draft International Standards (see 2.7).

National bodies have the responsibility to organize their national input in an efficient and timely manner, taking account of all relevant interests at their national level.

1.7.2 Membership of a subcommittee is open to P- and O-members of the parent technical committee. O-members of a technical committee may be granted P-membership in a subcommittee without changing their status in the parent technical committee.

Members of a technical committee shall be given the opportunity to notify their intention to become a P- or O-member of a subcommittee at the time of its establishment.

Membership of a technical committee does not imply automatic membership of a subcommittee; notification is required of the intended status of any interested member of the technical committee.

1.7.3 A national body may, at any time, begin or end membership or change its membership status in any technical committee or subcommittee by informing the office of the CEO and the secretariat of the committee concerned.

1.7.4 A technical committee or subcommittee secretariat shall notify the Chief Executive Officer if a P-member of that technical committee or subcommittee

- has been persistently inactive and has failed to ~~make a~~ contribute~~ion~~ to 2 ~~successive~~~~consecutive~~ technical committee/subcommittee meetings, either by direct participation or by correspondence and has failed to appoint any experts to the technical work, ~~or~~
- ~~or~~ has failed to vote on questions formally submitted for voting within the technical committee or subcommittee (see 0).

Upon receipt of such a notification, the Chief Executive Officer shall remind the national body of its obligation to take an active part in the work of the technical committee or subcommittee. In the absence of a satisfactory response to this reminder, and upon persistent continuation of the above articulated shortcomings in required P-member behaviour, the national body shall without exception automatically have its status changed to that of O-member. A national body having its status so changed may, after a period of 12 months, indicate to the Chief Executive Officer that it wishes to regain P-membership of the committee, in which case this shall be granted.

1.7.5 If a P-member of a technical committee or subcommittee fails to vote on an enquiry draft or final draft International Standard prepared by the respective committee, the Chief Executive Officer shall remind the national body of its obligation to vote. In the absence of a satisfactory response to this reminder, the national body shall automatically have its status changed to that of O-member. A national body having its status so changed may, after a period of twelve months, indicate to the Chief Executive Officer that it wishes to regain P-membership of the committee, in which case this shall be granted.

1.8 Chairmen of technical committees and subcommittees

1.8.1 Appointment

For the appointment of chairmen, see the respective Supplements to the ISO/IEC Directives.

The ~~c~~Chairman of a TC shall be nominated by the secretariat of the TC, and approved by the ISO Technical Management Board. The ~~c~~Chairman of a SC shall be nominated by the secretariat of the SC, and approved by the technical committee. The initial nomination may be for a maximum period of six years or such shorter period as may be appropriate. Successive extensions each of a maximum of three years shall be approved by the parent body (ISO/TMB in the case of a TC, TC in the case of a SC.)

The sharing of secretariats and chairmanships by developing and developed countries is strongly encouraged. Consequently, secretariats in developed countries are encouraged to consider the possibility of nominating a chairman from a developing country and secretariats in developing countries are encouraged to consider the possibility of nominating a chairman from a developed country.

1.8.2 Responsibilities

The chairman of a technical committee is responsible for the overall management of that technical committee, including any subcommittees and working groups.

The chairman of a technical committee or subcommittee shall

- a) act in a purely international capacity, divesting him- or herself of a national position; thus he or she cannot serve concurrently as the delegate of a national body in his or her own committee;
- b) guide the secretary of that technical committee or subcommittee in carrying out his or her duty;
- c) conduct meetings with a view to reaching agreement on committee drafts (see 2.5);
- d) ensure at meetings that all points of view expressed are adequately summed up so that they are understood by all present;
- e) ensure at meetings that all decisions are clearly formulated and made available in written form by the secretary for confirmation during the meeting;
- f) take appropriate decisions at the enquiry stage (see 2.6);
- g) advise the technical management board on important matters relating to that technical committee via the technical committee secretariat. For this purpose he or she shall receive reports from the chairmen of any subcommittees via the subcommittee secretariats;
- h) ensure that the policy and strategic decisions of the technical management board are implemented in the committee;
- i) ensure the establishment and ongoing maintenance of a strategic business plan covering the activities of the technical committee and all groups reporting to the technical committee, including all subcommittees;
- j) ensure the appropriate and consistent implementation and application of the committee's strategic business plan to the activities of the technical committee's or subcommittee's work programme;
- k) assist in the case of an appeal against a committee decision.

In case of unforeseen unavailability of the chairman at a meeting, a session chairman may be elected by the participants.

1.8.3 Vice-chairmen

Committees are encouraged to make special provisions to involve representatives from developing countries in their governance structures. This may include the creation of positions of vice-chairman, being limited to one vice-chair per committee.

When it is proposed to create a position of vice-chairman, the candidate shall be nominated by the chairman and secretariat of the committee concerned from amongst the developing countries holding P-membership (either directly or via a twinning arrangement) and shall be formally appointed by the committee. The term of office shall be three years and may be extended for successive periods of three years. The delineation of responsibilities between the chairman and vice-chairman shall be decided by mutual agreement, with the committee members being informed accordingly.

1.9 Secretariats of technical committees and subcommittees

1.9.1 Allocation

The secretariat of a technical committee shall be allocated to a national body by the technical management board.

The secretariat of a subcommittee shall be allocated to a national body by the parent technical committee. However, if two or more national bodies offer to undertake the secretariat of the same subcommittee, the technical management board shall decide on the allocation of the subcommittee secretariat.

For both technical committees and subcommittees, the secretariat shall be allocated to a national body only if that national body

- a) has indicated its intention to participate actively in the work of that technical committee or subcommittee, and
- b) has accepted that it will fulfil its responsibilities as secretariat and is in a position to ensure that adequate resources are available for secretariat work (see D.2).

Once the secretariat of a technical committee or subcommittee has been allocated to a national body, the latter shall appoint a qualified individual as secretary (see D.1).

TC/SC secretariats, at intervals of 5 years, shall normally be subject to reconfirmation by the ISO Technical Management Board.

If, during a year when a particular TC/SC secretariat is due for reconfirmation, TC/SC productivity data show the committee to be experiencing difficulties, this will be drawn to the attention of the ISO Technical Management Board for decision as to whether a reconfirmation enquiry should be conducted. The allocation of those secretariats not notified for detailed examination will be reconfirmed automatically.

A reconfirmation enquiry may also be initiated at any time at the request of the Secretary-General or of a P-member of a committee. Such requests shall be accompanied by a written justification and shall be considered by the ISO Technical Management Board which will decide whether to conduct a reconfirmation enquiry.

The enquiry shall be conducted amongst the P-members of the committee to determine whether the P-members are satisfied that sufficient resources are available to the secretariat and that the performance of the secretariat is satisfactory. Any P-member responding negatively shall be invited to indicate whether it is willing itself to accept the secretariat of the committee.

The enquiry shall be conducted by the ISO Technical Management Board in the case of TC secretariats, and by TC secretariats in the case of SC secretariats. However, in cases where the same member body holds both the TC and SC secretariat, the enquiry shall be conducted by the ISO Technical Management Board.

If there are no negative responses, the secretariat allocation shall be reconfirmed. All negative responses concerning both TC and SC secretariats shall be referred to the ISO Technical Management Board for decision.

1.9.2 Responsibilities

The national body to which the secretariat has been allocated shall ensure the provision of technical and administrative services to its respective technical committee or subcommittee.

The secretariat is responsible for monitoring, reporting, and ensuring active progress of the work, and shall use its utmost endeavour to bring this work to an early and satisfactory conclusion. These tasks shall be carried out as far as possible by correspondence.

The secretariat is responsible for ensuring that the ISO/IEC Directives and the decisions of the technical management board are followed.

A secretariat shall act in a purely international capacity, divesting itself of a national point of view.

The secretariat is responsible for the following to be executed in a timely manner:

- a) Working documents:
 - i) Preparation of committee drafts, arranging for their distribution and the treatment of the comments received;
 - ii) Preparation of enquiry drafts and text for the circulation of the final draft International Standards or publication of International Standards;
 - iii) Ensuring the equivalence of the English and French texts, if necessary with the assistance of other national bodies that are able and willing to take responsibility for the language

versions concerned. (See also 1.10 and the respective Supplements to the ISO/IEC Directives);

b) Project management

- i) Assisting in the establishment of priorities and target dates for each project;
- ii) Notifying the names, etc. of all working group and maintenance team convenors and project leaders to the office of the CEO;
- iii) Proposing proactively the publication of alternative deliverables or cancellation of projects that are running significantly overtime, and/or which appear to lack sufficient support;

c) Meetings (see also Clause 4), including:

- i) Establishment of the agenda and arranging for its distribution;
- ii) Arranging for the distribution of all documents on the agenda, including reports of working groups, and indicating all other documents which are necessary for discussion during the meeting (see E.5);
- iii) Recording of decisions taken in a meeting and making these decisions available in writing for confirmation during the meeting (see E.5);
- iv) Preparation of the minutes of meetings to be circulated within 3 months after the meeting;
- v) Preparation of reports to the technical management board (TC secretariat), in the IEC within 3 months after the meeting, or to the parent committee (SC secretariat);

d) Advising

Providing advice to the chairman, project leaders, and convenors on procedures associated with the progression of projects.

In all circumstances, each secretariat shall work in close liaison with the chairman of its technical committee or subcommittee.

The secretariat of a technical committee shall maintain close contact with the office of the CEO and with the members of the technical committee regarding its activities, including those of its subcommittees and working groups.

The secretariat of a subcommittee shall maintain close contact with the secretariat of the parent technical committee and as necessary with the office of the CEO. It shall also maintain contact with the members of the subcommittee regarding its activities, including those of its working groups.

The secretariat of a technical committee or subcommittee shall update in conjunction with the office of the CEO the record of the status of the membership of the committee and in ISO maintain a register of the membership of its working groups.

In order to achieve greater involvement of developing countries in ISO work, the member bodies in such countries are invited to enter into twinning arrangements with member bodies holding secretariats of committees carrying out work important to their national economy. Such member bodies shall hold P-membership in the committee concerned (either directly or via a twinning arrangement). The delineation of responsibilities shall be decided by mutual agreement between the member bodies concerned, with TC/SC members as well as ISO/CS being informed accordingly.

1.9.3 Change of secretariat of a technical committee

If a national body wishes to relinquish the secretariat of a technical committee, the national body concerned shall immediately inform the Chief Executive Officer, giving a minimum of 12 months' notice. The technical management board decides on the transfer of the secretariat to another national body.

If the secretariat of a technical committee persistently fails to fulfil its responsibilities as set out in these procedures, the Chief Executive Officer or a national body may have the matter placed before the technical management board, which may review the allocation of the secretariat with a view to its possible transfer to another national body.

When a member body wishing to relinquish a secretariat has entered into a twinning arrangement with a member body in a developing country, the [ISO/TMB](#) shall decide whether to offer the secretariat to the latter or whether to apply the normal procedure for reallocation of the secretariat.

1.9.4 Change of secretariat of a subcommittee

If a national body wishes to relinquish the secretariat of a subcommittee, the national body concerned shall immediately inform the secretariat of the parent technical committee, giving a minimum of 12 months' notice.

If the secretariat of a subcommittee persistently fails to fulfil its responsibilities as set out in these procedures, the Chief Executive Officer or a national body may have the matter placed before the parent technical committee, which may decide, by majority vote of the P-members, that the secretariat of the subcommittee should be re-allocated.

In either of the above cases an enquiry shall be made by the secretariat of the technical committee to obtain offers from other P-members of the subcommittee for undertaking the secretariat.

If two or more national bodies offer to undertake the secretariat of the same subcommittee or if, because of the structure of the technical committee, the re-allocation of the secretariat is linked with the re-allocation of the technical committee secretariat, the technical management board decides on the re-allocation of the subcommittee secretariat. If only one offer is received, the parent technical committee itself proceeds with the appointment.

When a member body wishing to relinquish a secretariat has entered into a twinning arrangement with a member body in a developing country, the normal procedure for reallocation of the secretariat shall be carried out.

1.10 Project committees

Project committees are established by the technical management board to prepare individual standards not falling within the scope of an existing technical committee.

NOTE Such standards carry one reference number but may be subdivided into parts.

Procedures for project committees are given in Annex K.

[Project committees wishing to be transformed into a technical committee shall follow the process for the establishment of a new technical committee \(see 1.5\).](#)

1.11 Editing committees

It is recommended that committees establish one or more editing committees for the purpose of updating and editing committee drafts, enquiry drafts and final draft International Standards and for ensuring their conformity to the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2 (see also 2.6.6).

Such committees should comprise at least

- one technical expert of English mother tongue and having an adequate knowledge of French;
- one technical expert of French mother tongue and having an adequate knowledge of English;
- the project leader (see 2.1.8).

The project leader and/or secretary may take direct responsibility for one of the language versions concerned.

In IEC, a representative of the office of the CEO will attend editing committee meetings if required.

Editing committees shall meet when required by the respective technical committee or subcommittee secretariat for the purpose of updating and editing drafts which have been accepted by correspondence for further processing.

Editing committees shall be equipped with means of processing texts electronically and of providing the finalized texts in machine-readable form (see also 2.6.6).

1.12 Working groups

1.12.1 Technical committees or subcommittees may establish working groups for specific tasks (see 2.4). A working group shall report to its parent technical committee or subcommittee through a convenor appointed by the parent committee.

A working group comprises a restricted number of experts individually appointed by the P-members, A-liaisons of the parent committee and D-liaison organizations, brought together to deal with the specific task allocated to the working group. The experts act in a personal capacity and not as the official representative of the P-member or A-liaison organization (see 1.17) by which they have been appointed with the exception of those appointed by D-liaison organizations (see 1.17.3.4). However, it is recommended that they keep close contact with that P-member or organization in order to inform them about the progress of the work and of the various opinions in the working group at the earliest possible stage.

It is recommended that working groups be reasonably limited in size. The technical committee or subcommittee may therefore decide upon the total number of experts and also upon the maximum number of experts appointed by each P-member.

Once the decision to set up a working group has been taken, P-members and A- and D-liaison organizations shall be officially informed in order to appoint expert(s).

Working groups shall be numbered in sequence in the order in which they are established.

When a committee has decided to set up a working group, the convenor or acting convenor shall immediately be appointed and shall arrange for the first meeting of the working group to be held within 3 months. This information shall be communicated immediately after the committee meeting to the P-members of the committee and A- and D-liaison organizations, with an invitation to appoint experts within 6 weeks.

1.12.2 The composition of a working group (names, addresses, phone and fax numbers and e-mail addresses) shall be made available by the committee secretary to the working group convenor prior to the first meeting of the working group. The names of the members may also be made available to the other members and the members of the parent committee.

1.12.3 Persistently inactive experts, meaning absence of contributions through attendance to working group meetings or by correspondence shall be removed, by the office of the CEO at the request of the technical committee or sub-committee secretary, from working groups after consultation with the P-member.

1.12.4 On completion of its task(s) — normally at the end of the enquiry stage (see 2.6) — the working group shall be disbanded, the project leader remaining with consultant status until completion of the publication stage (see 2.8).

1.12.5 Distribution of the internal documents of a working group and of its reports shall be carried out in accordance with procedures described in the respective Supplements of the ISO/IEC Directives.

1.12.6 In special cases a joint working group (JWG) may be established to undertake a specific task in which more than one ISO and/or IEC technical committee or subcommittee is interested. The decision to establish a joint working group shall be accompanied by mutual agreement between the committees on:

- the committee/ organization having the administrative responsibility for the project;
- the convenor of the joint working group;
- the membership of the joint working group (membership may be open to all interested experts from the parent committees, or it may be decided to limit the participation to equal numbers from each of the parent committee for example).

The committee/organization with the administrative responsibility for the project shall:

- record the project in their programme of work;

- ensure that the comments and votes at all stages of the project are compiled and handled appropriately (see 2.5, 2.6 and 2.7);
- prepare drafts for the committee, enquiry and approval stages according to procedures given in 2.5, 2.6 and 2.7;
- be responsible for maintenance of the publication.

A proposal to establish a joint ISO/IEC working group, including decisions on which committee/organization is responsible for final publication and subsequent maintenance of the publication, the joint working group convenor and membership shall be submitted for information to the technical management boards (see also B.4.2.11).

1.13 Groups having advisory functions within a committee

1.13.1 A group having advisory functions may be established by a technical committee or subcommittee to assist the chairman and secretariat in tasks concerning coordination, planning and steering of the committee's work or other specific tasks of an advisory nature.

1.13.2 A proposal to establish such a group shall include recommendations regarding its constitution, bearing in mind the requirement for sufficient representation of affected interests while at the same time limiting its size as far as possible in order to ensure its efficient operation. Members of advisory groups shall be nominated by national bodies. The parent committee shall approve the final constitution.

In order to achieve greater involvement by member bodies in developing countries in the governance of ISO committees, it is strongly recommended that special provisions be made to allocate places for representatives of developing countries in any advisory groups established by a committee. Those representatives shall be nominated by member bodies holding P-membership in the committee concerned (either directly or via a twinning arrangement).

1.13.3 The tasks allocated to such a group may include the making of proposals relating to the drafting or harmonization of publications (in particular International Standards, Technical Specifications, Publicly Available Specifications and Technical Reports), but shall not include the preparation of such documents.

Committees are strongly encouraged to establish such groups for assessing new work item proposals, especially with regard to the market need for new International Standards, global relevance dynamics, relationship of proposed standards to existing technical regulations and how this could affect the standards development work, and identification of relevant stakeholders (countries, stakeholder groups and specific entities) that should be engaged in the work.

1.13.4 The results of such a group shall be presented in the form of recommendations to the body that established the group. The recommendations may include proposals for the establishment of a working group (see 1.12) or a joint working group (see 1.12.6) for the preparation of publications.

1.13.5 The internal documents of a group having advisory functions shall be distributed to its members only, with a copy to the secretariat of the committee concerned and to the office of the CEO.

1.13.6 Such a group shall be disbanded once its specified tasks have been completed.

1.14 Ad hoc groups

Technical committees or subcommittees may establish ad hoc groups, the purpose of which is to study a precisely defined problem on which the group reports to its parent committee at the same meeting, or at the latest at the next meeting.

The membership of an ad hoc group shall be chosen from the delegates present at the meeting of the parent committee, supplemented, if necessary, by experts appointed by the committee. The parent committee shall also appoint a rapporteur.

An ad hoc group shall be automatically disbanded at the meeting to which it has presented its report.

1.15 Liaison between technical committees

See Annex SH concerning coordination of the standardization of graphical symbols.

1.15.1 Within each organization, technical committees and/or subcommittees working in related fields shall establish and maintain liaison. Liaisons shall also be established, where appropriate, with technical committees responsible for basic aspects of standardization (e.g. terminology, graphical symbols). Liaison shall include the exchange of basic documents, including new work item proposals and working drafts.

1.15.2 The maintenance of such liaison is the responsibility of the respective technical committee secretariats, which may delegate the task to the secretariats of the subcommittees.

1.15.3 A technical committee or subcommittee may designate an observer, or observers, to follow the work of another technical committee with which a liaison has been established, or one or several of its subcommittees. The designation of such observers shall be notified to the secretariat of the committee concerned, which shall communicate all relevant documents to the observer or observers and to the secretariat of that technical committee or subcommittee. The appointed observer shall make progress reports to the secretariat by which he has been appointed.

1.15.4 Such observers shall have the right to participate in the meetings of the technical committee or subcommittee whose work they have been designated to follow but shall not have the right to vote. They may contribute to the discussion in meetings, including the submission of written comments, on matters within the competence of their own technical committee. They may also attend meetings of working groups of the technical committee or subcommittee if they so request.

1.16 Liaison between ISO and IEC

1.16.1 Arrangements for adequate liaison between ISO and IEC technical committees and subcommittees are essential. The channel of correspondence for the establishment of liaison between ISO and IEC technical committees and subcommittees is through the offices of the CEOs. As far as the study of new subjects by either organization is concerned, the CEOs seek agreement between the two organizations whenever a new or revised programme of work is contemplated in the one organization which may be of interest to the other, so that the work will go forward without overlap or duplication of effort. (See also Annex B.)

1.16.2 Observers designated by ISO or IEC shall have the right to participate in the discussions of the other organization's technical committee or subcommittee whose work they have been designated to follow, and may submit written comments; they shall not have the right to vote.

1.17 Liaison with other organizations

1.17.1 General requirements applicable to all categories of liaisons

In order to be effective, liaison shall operate in both directions, with suitable reciprocal arrangements.

The desirability of liaison shall be taken into account at an early stage of the work.

The liaison organization shall accept the policy based on the ISO/IEC Directives concerning copyright (see 2.13), whether owned by the liaison organization or by other parties. The statement on copyright policy will be provided to the liaison organization with an invitation to make an explicit statement as to its acceptability. The cooperating organization is not entitled to make any charges for documents submitted.

A liaison organization shall agree to ISO/IEC procedures, including IPR (see 2.13).

Liaison organizations shall accept the requirements of 2.14 on patent rights.

Technical committees and subcommittees shall review all their liaison arrangements on a regular basis, at least every 2 years, or at every committee meeting.

On the first instance in which an organization applies for a liaison with an ISO committee, the Central

Secretariat requests a copy of its statutes to ensure that the organization is a legal entity and that:

- it is not-for-profit;
- it is open to members worldwide or over a broad region;
- its activities and membership demonstrate that the organization has the competence and expertise to contribute to the development of International Standards or the authority to promote their implementation.

If these criteria are fulfilled, the organization is considered to be eligible for liaison (category A or B). In cases where the activities of the organization are very focused or the membership is not broadly-based, the organization would normally be offered category D liaison which would allow it to nominate experts to participate in working groups working on subjects relevant to the organization.

If necessary, the ISO Central Secretariat will consult the member body in the country where the liaison organization is based, and shall refer the application to the committee secretariat. Upon receipt of the request, the secretariat shall assess whether it is fully justified and relevant for the TC/SC, shall consult the P-members of the committee concerned and shall advise the ISO Central Secretariat of the result of this consultation. Agreement to establish the liaison requires approval of the application by two-thirds of the P-members voting, provided that the member body in the country where the organization is based does not vote negatively. If any other P-member votes negatively, and indicates that it registers sustained opposition to the establishment of the liaison, the application for liaison shall be referred to the [ISO/TMB](#) for decision.

1.17.2 Liaisons at the technical committee/subcommittee level

1.17.2.1 Category A and B liaison

The categories of liaison are the following.

- **Category A:** Organizations that make an effective contribution to the work of the technical committee or subcommittee for questions dealt with by this technical committee or subcommittee. Such organizations are given access to all relevant documentation and are invited to meetings. They may nominate experts to participate in a WG (see 1.12.1).
- **Category B:** Organizations that have indicated a wish to be kept informed of the work of the technical committee or subcommittee. Such organizations are given access to reports on the work of a technical committee or subcommittee.

NOTE Category B is reserved for inter-governmental organizations.

Formatted: Font: 9 pt

1.17.2.2 Acceptance criteria

The liaison organizations shall be international or broadly based regional organizations working or interested in similar or related fields.

Technical committees and subcommittees shall seek the full and, if possible, formal backing of the organizations having liaison status for each document in which the latter is interested.

Any comments from liaison organizations should be given the same treatment as comments from member bodies. It should not be assumed that refusal by a liaison organization to provide its full backing is a sustained opposition. Where such objections are considered sustained oppositions, committees are invited to refer to clause 2.5.6 for further guidance.

1.17.2.3 Establishment of liaisons

Liaisons are established by the Chief Executive Officer in consultation with the secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee concerned. They are centrally recorded and reported to the technical management board.

1.17.3 Liaisons at the working group level

1.17.3.1 Category D liaison¹⁾

The category of liaison is as follows:

- **Category D:** Organizations that make a technical contribution to and participate actively in the work of a working group.

1.17.3.2 Acceptance criteria

Liaison organizations can include manufacturer associations, commercial associations, industrial consortia, user groups and professional and scientific societies.

Liaison organizations shall be multinational (in their objectives and standards development activities) with individual, company or country membership and may be permanent or transient in nature.

A liaison organization shall be willing to make a contribution to ISO or IEC as appropriate.

A liaison organization shall have a sufficient degree of representativity within its defined area of competence within a sector or subsector of the relevant technical or industrial field.

1.17.3.3 Management of liaisons

Category D liaisons shall be submitted for approval to the technical management board by the committee secretary, with a clear indication of the WG/PT/MT concerned. The submission shall include a rationale for the setting-up of the liaison, as well as an indication of how the organization meets the acceptance criteria given in 1.17.3.2. The committee secretary is responsible for administering D-liaisons.

Committees are urged to seek out the participation of all parties at the beginning of the development of a work item. Where a request for category D liaison is submitted late in the development stage of a particular work item, the request shall include details about the value that can be added by the organization in question despite its late involvement in the WG.

1.17.3.4 Rights and obligations

Category D liaison organizations have the right to participate as full members in a working group (see 1.12.1).

Category D liaison experts act as the official representative of the organization by which they are appointed.

2 Development of International Standards

2.1 The project approach

2.1.1 General

The primary duty of a technical committee or subcommittee is the development and maintenance of International Standards. However, committees are also strongly encouraged to consider publication of intermediate deliverables as described in Clause 3.

International Standards shall be developed on the basis of a project approach as described below.

2.1.2 Strategic Business plan

Annex SC describes the objectives of strategic business plans, and the procedure that applies to their development and approval.

Each technical committee shall prepare a strategic business plan for its own specific field of activity,

¹⁾ Category C liaison is reserved for ISO/IEC JTC 1.

- a) taking into account the business environment in which it is developing its work programme;
- b) indicating those areas of the work programme which are expanding, those which have been completed, and those nearing completion or in steady progress, and those which have not progressed and should be deleted (see also 2.1.9);
- c) evaluating revision work needed (see also the respective Supplements to the ISO/IEC Directives);
- d) giving a prospective view on emerging needs.

The strategic business plan shall be formally agreed upon by the technical committee and be included in its report for review and approval by the technical management board on a regular basis.

2.1.3 Project stages

2.1.3.1 Table 1 shows the sequence of project stages through which the technical work is developed, and gives the name of the document associated with each project stage. The development of Technical Specifications, Technical Reports and Publicly Available Specifications is described in Clause 3.

Table 1 — Project stages and associated documents

Project stage	Associated document	
	Name	Abbreviation
Preliminary stage	Preliminary work item	PWI
Proposal stage	New work item proposal ¹⁾	NP
Preparatory stage	Working draft(s) ¹⁾	WD
Committee stage	Committee draft(s) ¹⁾	CD
Enquiry stage	Enquiry draft ²⁾	ISO/DIS IEC/CDV
Approval stage	final draft International Standard ³⁾	FDIS
Publication stage	International Standard	ISO, IEC or ISO/IEC
1) These stages may be omitted, as described in Annex F.		
2) Draft International Standard in ISO, committee draft for vote in IEC.		
3) May be omitted (see 2.6.4).		

2.1.3.2 F.1 illustrates the steps leading to publication of an International Standard.

2.1.3.3 The ISO and IEC Supplements to the ISO/IEC Directives give a matrix presentation of the project stages, with a numerical designation of associated sub-stages.

To facilitate the monitoring of project development, ISO has adopted a systematic approach to project management, based on subdivision of projects into stages and substages.

The project management system is associated with a detailed project tracking system that is a subset of the Harmonized Stage Code system *ISO Guide 69:1999 Harmonized Stage Code system (Edition 2) — Principles and guidelines for use*. Annex SD gives a matrix presentation of this project tracking system, with the numerical designation of associated sub-stages. A project is registered in the ISO Central Secretariat database as having reached each particular step when the action or decision indicated at that point has been taken and ISO Central Secretariat has been duly informed.

2.1.4 Project description and acceptance

A project is any work intended to lead to the issue of a new, amended or revised International Standard. A project may subsequently be subdivided (see also 2.1.5.4).

A project shall be undertaken only if a proposal has been accepted in accordance with the relevant procedures (see 2.3 for proposals for new work items, and the respective Supplements to the ISO/IEC Directives for review and maintenance of existing International Standards).

2.1.5 Programme of work

The numbering scheme adopted within ISO for all working documents is defined in Annex SE.

2.1.5.1 The programme of work of a technical committee or subcommittee comprises all projects allocated to that technical committee or subcommittee, including maintenance of published standards.

NOTE Throughout the following text, the expression "technical committee or subcommittee" means "subcommittee" in all cases where there exists a subcommittee within whose defined scope the project in question may be considered to lie.

2.1.5.2 In establishing its programme of work, each technical committee or subcommittee shall consider sectoral planning requirements as well as requests for International Standards initiated by sources outside the technical committee, i.e. other technical committees, advisory groups of the technical management board, policy level committees and organizations outside ISO and IEC. (See also 2.1.2.)

2.1.5.3 Projects shall be within the agreed scope of the technical committee. Their selection shall be subject to close scrutiny in accordance with the policy objectives and resources of ISO and IEC. (See also Annex C.)

2.1.5.4 Each project in the programme of work shall be given a number (see respective Supplements to the ISO/IEC Directives) and shall be retained in the programme of work under that number until the work on that project is completed or its deletion has been agreed upon. The technical committee or subcommittee may subdivide a number if it is subsequently found necessary to subdivide the project itself. The subdivisions of the work shall lie fully within the scope of the original project; otherwise, a new work item proposal shall be made.

2.1.5.5 The programme of work shall indicate, if appropriate, the subcommittee and/or working group to which each project is allocated.

2.1.5.6 The agreed programme of work of a new technical committee shall be submitted to the technical management board for approval.

2.1.6 Target dates

The technical committee or subcommittee shall establish, for each project on its programme of work, target dates for the completion of each of the following steps:

- completion of the first working draft (in the event that only an outline of a working document has been provided by the originator of the new work item proposal – see 2.3);
- circulation of the first committee draft;
- circulation of the enquiry draft;
- circulation of the final draft International Standard (in agreement with the office of the CEO);
- publication of the International Standard (in agreement with the office of the CEO).

These target dates shall correspond to the shortest possible development times, taking into account the need to produce International Standards rapidly and shall be reported to the office of the CEO, which distributes the information to all national bodies. For establishment of target dates, see the respective Supplements to the ISO/IEC Directives.

In establishing target dates, the relationships between projects shall be taken into account. Priority shall be given to those projects intended to lead to International Standards upon which other International Standards will depend for their implementation. The highest priority shall be given to those projects having a significant effect on international trade and recognized as such by the technical management board.

The following time limits may be used as guidance when establishing target dates (following approval of the work item):

- availability of working draft (if not supplied with the proposal): 6 months;
- availability of committee draft: 12 months;
- availability of enquiry draft: 24 months;
- availability of approval draft: 33 months;
- availability of published standard: 36 months.

The technical management board may also instruct the secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee concerned to submit the latest available draft to the office of the CEO for publication as a Technical Specification (see 3.1).

All target dates shall be kept under continuous review and amended as necessary, and shall be clearly indicated in the programme of work. Revised target dates shall be notified to the technical management board. The technical management board will cancel all work items which have been on the work programme for more than 5 years and have not reached the approval stage (see 2.7).

2.1.6.1 General

When a proposed new project is approved (whether for a new deliverable or for the revision of an existing deliverable), when submitting the results to ISO/CS the committee secretariat shall also indicate the selected standards development track, as follows (all target dates are calculated from the date of adoption as an approved project, AWI, stage 10.99):

Accelerated standards development track

6 months to produce first DIS

18 months to produce FDIS

24 months to publication

Default standards development track

12 months to produce first CD

18 months to produce first DIS

30 months to produce FDIS

36 months to publication

Extended standards development track

12 months to produce first CD

24 months to produce first DIS

42 months to produce FDIS

48 months to publication

The target dates shall be kept under continuous review by committee secretariats which shall ensure that they are reviewed and either confirmed or revised at each committee meeting. Such reviews shall also seek to confirm that projects are still market relevant and in cases in which they are found to be no longer required, or if the likely completion date is going to be too late, thus causing market players to adopt an alternative solution, the projects shall be cancelled.

2.1.6.2 Automatic cancellation of projects (and their reinstatement)

~~For projects approved prior to September 2003, a project shall be automatically cancelled by the Central Secretariat if~~

- ~~— it has not advanced at least one project stage within a period of 24 months;~~
- ~~— from the date of inclusion in the programme of work, it has not reached the publication stage within 60 months.~~

~~To be reinstated cancelled projects shall be submitted by the secretariat of the committee concerned to a 3 months reinstatement ballot among P members of the committee, applying the same criteria for justification and approval as for a new work item proposal (see ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1, 2.3).~~

~~NOTE It is important that all requests to ISO Central Secretariat for reinstatement are accompanied by full justification.~~

For projects approved on or after 1 September 2003, if the target date for DIS (stage 40.00) or FDIS

(stage 50.00) is exceeded, the committee shall decide within 6 months on one of the following actions:

- a) projects at the preparatory or committee stages: submission of a DIS - if the technical content is acceptable and mature; projects at the enquiry stage: submission of a second DIS or FDIS - if the technical content is acceptable and mature;
- b) publication of a TS - if the technical content is acceptable but unlikely sufficiently mature for a future International Standard;
- c) publication of a TR - if the technical content is not considered to be acceptable for publication as a TS or for a future International Standard but is nevertheless considered to be of interest to the public;
- d) submission of a request for extension to the [ISO/TMB](#) - if no consensus can be reached but there is strong interest from stakeholders to continue;
- e) deletion of the work item - if the committee is unable to find a solution.

If, at the end of the six month period, none of the above actions has been taken, the project shall be automatically cancelled by the Central Secretariat. Projects so deleted may only be reinstated with the approval of the [ISO](#) Technical Management Board.

2.1.7 Project management

The secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee is responsible for the management of all projects in the programme of work of that technical committee or subcommittee, including monitoring of their progress against the agreed target dates.

If target dates (see 2.1.6) are not met and there is insufficient support for the work (that is, the acceptance requirements for new work given in 2.3.5 are no longer met), the committee responsible shall cancel the work item.

2.1.8 Project leader

For the development of each project, a project leader (the WG convenor, a designated expert or, if appropriate, the secretary) shall be appointed by the technical committee or subcommittee, taking into account the project leader nomination made by the originator of the new work item proposal (see 2.3.4). It shall be ascertained that the project leader will have access to appropriate resources for carrying out the development work. The project leader shall act in a purely international capacity, divesting him- or herself of a national point of view. The project leader should be prepared to act as consultant, when required, regarding technical matters arising at the proposal stage through to the publication stage (see 2.5 to 2.8).

The secretariat shall communicate the name and address of the project leader, with identification of the project concerned, to the office of the CEO.

2.1.9 Progress control

Periodical progress reports to the technical committee shall be made by its subcommittees and working groups (see also ISO and IEC Supplements to the ISO/IEC Directives). Meetings between their secretariats will assist in controlling the progress.

The office of the CEO shall monitor the progress of all work and shall report periodically to the technical management board. For this purpose, the office of the CEO shall receive copies of documents as indicated in the ISO and IEC Supplements to the ISO/IEC Directives.

To enable ISO Central Secretariat to monitor the progress of all work and to report periodically to the [ISO](#) Technical Management Board, the committee secretariat shall ensure that the ISO Central Secretariat is notified each time a new document is distributed.

2.1.10 Responsibility for keeping records

The responsibility for keeping records concerning committee work and the background to the publication

Formatted: Tab stops: 1 cm, Left

of International Standards and other ISO deliverables is divided between committee secretariats and the ISO Central Secretariat. The maintenance of such records is of particular importance in the context of changes of secretariat responsibility from one member body to another. It is also important that information on key decisions and important correspondence pertaining to the preparation of International Standards and other ISO deliverables should be readily retrievable in the event of any dispute arising out of the provenance of the technical content of the publications.

The secretariats of committees shall establish and maintain records of all official transactions concerning their committees, in particular reference copies of approved minutes of meetings and resolutions. Copies of working documents, results of ballots etc. shall be kept at least until such time as the publications to which they refer have been revised or have completed their next systematic review, but in any case for a minimum of five years after the publication of the related International Standards or other ISO deliverable.

The ISO Central Secretariat shall keep reference copies of all International Standards and other ISO deliverables, including withdrawn editions, and shall keep up-to-date records of member body votes in respect of these publications. Copies of draft International Standards (DIS) and of final draft International Standards (FDIS), including associated reports of voting, and final proofs shall be kept at least until such time as the publications to which they refer have been revised or have completed their next systematic review, but in any case for a minimum of five years after publication.

Preliminary stage

2.2 Preliminary stage

2.2.1 Technical committees or subcommittees may introduce into their work programmes, by a simple majority vote of their P-members, preliminary work items (for example, corresponding to subjects dealing with emerging technologies), which are not yet sufficiently mature for processing to further stages.

Such items may include, for example, those listed in the strategic business plan, particularly as given under 2.1.2 d) giving a prospective view on emerging needs.

2.2.2 The preliminary stage shall be applied for work items where no target dates can be established.

2.2.3 All preliminary work items shall be subject to regular review by the committee. The committee shall evaluate the resources required for each such item.

2.2.4 This stage can be used for the elaboration of a new work item proposal (see 2.3) and the development of an initial draft.

2.2.5 Before progressing to the preparatory stage, all such items shall be subject to approval in accordance with the procedures described in 2.3.

2.3 Proposal stage

In the case of proposals to prepare management system deliverables, see Annex SM.

2.3.1 A new work item proposal (NP) is a proposal for:

- a new standard;
- a new part of an existing standard;
- in ISO, revision of an existing standard or part;
- in ISO, an amendment to an existing standard or part;
- a Technical Specification (see 3.1) or a Publicly Available Specification (see 3.2).

2.3.2 A new work item proposal within the scope of an existing technical committee or subcommittee may be made in the respective organization by

- a national body;
- the secretariat of that technical committee or subcommittee;

- another technical committee or subcommittee;
- an organization in liaison;
- the technical management board or one of its advisory groups;
- the Chief Executive Officer.

2.3.3 Where both an ISO and an IEC technical committee are concerned, the Chief Executive Officers shall arrange for the necessary coordination. (See also Annex B.)

2.3.4 Each new work item proposal shall be presented using the appropriate form, and shall be fully justified and properly documented (see Annex C ~~C.5 for all new work other than amendments to existing publications~~).

Field Code Changed

The originator of the new work item proposal shall

- make every effort to provide a first working draft for discussion, or shall at least provide an outline of such a working draft;
- nominate a project leader.

The form shall be submitted to the office of the CEO or to the secretariat of the relevant committee for proposals within the scope of an existing committee. The CEO or the relevant committee chairman and secretariat shall ensure that the proposal is properly developed in accordance with ISO and IEC requirements (see Annex C) and provides sufficient information to support informed decision making by national bodies.

If a proposer submits proposal documentation that may be questionable as to whether it provides sufficient information, the proposal shall be returned to the proposer for further development before circulation for voting. This is intended as a quality control process only, and shall not reflect any value judgment about the market relevance or need for the proposed standard(s).

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

If a proposal is returned to the proposer for further development, the proposer has the right to request that its proposal be circulated for voting as originally presented and without further development.

The Chief Executive Officer or the relevant committee chairman and secretariat shall also assess the relationship of the proposal to existing work, and may consult interested parties, including chairmen of committees conducting related existing work, immediately after such a proposal is received. If necessary, an ad hoc group may be established to examine the proposal. Any comments and recommendations resulting from these consultations shall be added to the proposal form. These comments and recommendations shall not include value judgments about the market relevance or need for the proposed standard(s).

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, English (U.K.)

Formatted: Normal

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, English (U.K.)

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, English (U.K.)

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Copies of the completed form shall be circulated to the members of the technical committee or subcommittee for P-member ballot and to the O-members for information.

Formatted: Font: 9 pt, English (U.S.)

The proposed date of availability of the publication shall be indicated on the form.

A decision upon a new work item proposal may be taken either by correspondence or at a meeting of a technical committee or subcommittee.

If a decision upon a new work item proposal is to be taken at a meeting, the proposal shall be put on the agenda, according to the conditions of 4.2.1.

Votes shall be returned within 3 months or at the meeting at which the decision is to be taken.

When completing the reply form, national bodies shall provide a statement justifying their decision. If no such statement is provided, the positive or negative vote of a national body will not be registered and considered.

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

In ISO, if the NP relates to a revision of existing work, a new project clearly related to existing work within the committee, or new parts of a multiple part standard, the national body may indicate that

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

previously named experts can be regarded as the experts for this specific project(s) under consideration.

P members agreeing to participate actively in the work shall nominate (an) expert(s) on the appropriate form.

When completing the reply form, national bodies should consider the principles given in Annex C.

2.3.5 Acceptance requires

a) approval of the work item by a simple majority of the P-members of the technical committees or subcommittees voting; and

—b) a commitment to participate actively in the development of the project, i.e. to make an effective contribution at the preparatory stage, by nominating technical experts and by commenting on working drafts, by, ~~in IEC,~~ at least 4 P-members in committees with 16 or less P-members, and at least 5 P-members in committees with 17 or more P-members; only P-members having also approved the inclusion of the work item in the programme of work [see a b)] will be taken into account when making this tally. If experts are not nominated on the form accompanying an approval vote, then the national body's commitment to active participation will not be registered and considered when determining if the approval criteria have been met on this ballot;

Formatted: List Number, Numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: a, b, c, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0 cm + Tab after: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 0.63 cm

— in ISO, 5 P-members approving the work item;

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.6 cm, No bullets or numbering

Individual committees may increase this minimum requirement of nominated experts, and in cases, where it can be documented that the industry and/or technical knowledge exists only with a very small number of P-members, then the committee may request permission from the technical management board to proceed with fewer than 4 or 5 nominated technical experts.

a) approval of the work item by a simple majority of the P-members of the technical committee or subcommittee voting.

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.63 cm, No bullets or numbering

2.3.6 Once a new work item proposal is accepted, it shall be registered in the programme of work of the relevant technical committee or subcommittee as a new project with the appropriate priority and shall be registered by the office of the CEO. The agreed target dates (see 2.1.6) shall be indicated on the appropriate form.

2.3.7 The inclusion of the project in the programme of work concludes the proposal stage.

2.4 Preparatory stage

2.4.1 The preparatory stage covers the preparation of a working draft (WD) conforming to the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.

2.4.2 When a new project is accepted the project leader shall work with the experts nominated by the P-members during the approval (see 2.3.5a)).

2.4.3 The secretariat may propose to the technical committee or subcommittee, either at a meeting or by correspondence, to create a working group the convenor of which will normally be the project leader.

Such a working group shall be set up by the technical committee or subcommittee, which shall define the task(s) and set the target date(s) for submission of draft(s) to the technical committee or subcommittee (see also 1.12). The working group convenor shall ensure that the work undertaken remains within the scope of the balloted work item.

2.4.4 In responding to the proposal to set up a working group those P-members having agreed to participate actively (see 2.3.5a)) shall each confirm their technical expert(s). Other P-members or A- or D- liaison organizations may also nominate expert(s).

2.4.5 The project leader is responsible for the development of the project and will normally convene and chair any meetings of the working group. He may invite a member of the working group to act as its secretary.

2.4.6 Every possible effort shall be made to prepare both a French and an English version of the text in order to avoid delays in the later stages of the development of the project.

If a trilingual (English — French — Russian) standard is to be prepared, this provision should include the Russian version.

2.4.7 For time limits relating to this stage, see 2.1.6.

2.4.8 The preparatory stage ends when a working draft is available for circulation to the members of the technical committee or subcommittee as a first committee draft (CD) and is registered by the office of the CEO. The committee may also decide to publish the final working draft as a PAS (see 3.2) to respond particular market needs.

2.5 Committee stage

2.5.1 The committee stage is the principal stage at which comments from national bodies are taken into consideration, with a view to reaching consensus on the technical content. National bodies shall therefore carefully study the texts of committee drafts and submit all pertinent comments at this stage.

Any graphical symbol shall be submitted to the relevant ISO committee responsible for the registration of graphical symbols (see Annex SH).

2.5.2 As soon as it is available, a committee draft shall be circulated to all P-members and O-members of the technical committee or subcommittee for consideration, with a clear indication of the latest date for submission of replies.

A period of 2, 3 or 4 months as agreed by the technical committee or subcommittee shall be available for national bodies to comment.

Comments shall be sent for preparation of the compilation of comments, in accordance with the instructions given.

National bodies shall fully brief their delegates on the national position before meetings.

2.5.3 No more than 4 weeks after the closing date for submission of replies, the secretariat shall prepare the compilation of comments and arrange for its circulation to all P-members and O-members of the technical committee or subcommittee. When preparing this compilation, the secretariat shall indicate its proposal, made in consultation with the chairman of the technical committee or subcommittee and, if necessary, the project leader, for proceeding with the project, either

- a) to discuss the committee draft and comments at the next meeting, or
- b) to circulate a revised committee draft for consideration, or
- c) to register the committee draft for the enquiry stage (see 2.6).

In the case of b) and c), the secretariat shall indicate in the compilation of comments the action taken on each of the comments received. This shall be made available to all P-members, if necessary by the circulation of a revised compilation of comments, no later than in parallel with the submission of a revised CD for consideration by the committee (case b) or simultaneously with the submission of the finalized version of the draft to the office of the CEO for registration for the enquiry stage (case c).

Committees are required to respond to all comments received.

If, within 2 months from the date of dispatch, 2 or more P-members disagree with proposal b) or c) of the secretariat, the committee draft shall be discussed at a meeting (see 4.2.1.3).

2.5.4 If a committee draft is considered at a meeting but agreement on it is not reached on that occasion, a further committee draft incorporating decisions taken at the meeting shall be distributed

within 3 months for consideration. A period of 2, 3 or 4 months as agreed by the technical committee or subcommittee shall be available to national bodies to comment on the draft and on any subsequent versions.

2.5.5 Consideration of successive drafts shall continue until consensus of the P-members of the technical committee or subcommittee has been obtained or a decision to abandon or defer the project has been made.

2.5.6 The decision to circulate an enquiry draft (see 2.6.1) shall be taken on the basis of the consensus principle.

It is the responsibility of the chairman of the technical committee or subcommittee, in consultation with the secretary of his committee and, if necessary, the project leader, to judge whether there is sufficient support bearing in mind the definition of consensus given in ISO/IEC Guide 2:2004.

"consensus: General agreement, characterized by the absence of sustained opposition to substantial issues by any important part of the concerned interests and by a process that involves seeking to take into account the views of all parties concerned and to reconcile any conflicting arguments.

NOTE Consensus need not imply unanimity."

The following applies to the definition of consensus:

The process of reaching consensus, many different points of views will be expressed and addressed as the document evolves. However, "sustained oppositions" are views expressed during minuted committee, working group (WG) or task force (TF) meetings which are maintained by an important part of the concerned interest and which are incompatible with the committee consensus. The notion of "concerned interest(s)" will vary depending on the dynamics of the committee and must therefore be determined by the committee leadership on a case by case basis. The concept of sustained opposition is not applicable in the context of member body votes on CD, DIS or FDIS since these are subject to the applicable voting rules.

Those expressing sustained oppositions have a right to be heard and the following approach is recommended when a sustained opposition is declared:

- The leadership must first assess whether the opposition can be considered a "sustained opposition", i.e. whether it has been sustained by an important part of the concerned interest. If this is not the case, the leadership will register the opposition (i.e. in the minutes, records, etc.) and continue to lead the work on the document.
- If the leadership of the committee, WG or TF determines that there is a sustained opposition, it is required to try and resolve it in good faith. However, a sustained opposition is not akin to a right to veto. The obligation of the committee, WG or TF to address the sustained oppositions does not imply an obligation to successfully resolve the sustained opposition.

The responsibility for assessing whether or not consensus has been reached rests entirely with the leadership. This includes assessing whether there is sustained opposition or whether any sustained opposition can be resolved without compromising the existing level of consensus on the rest of the document. In such cases, the leadership will register the opposition and continue the work.

Those parties with sustained oppositions may avail themselves of appeals mechanisms as detailed in clause 5.

Within ISO and JTC 1, in case of doubt concerning consensus, approval by a two-thirds majority of the P-members of the technical committee or subcommittee voting may be deemed to be sufficient for the committee draft to be accepted for registration as an enquiry draft; however every attempt shall be made to resolve negative votes.

The secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee responsible for the committee draft shall ensure that the enquiry draft fully embodies decisions taken either at meetings or by correspondence.

2.5.7 When consensus has been reached in a technical committee or subcommittee, its secretariat shall submit the finalized version of the draft in electronic form suitable for distribution to the national members for enquiry (2.6.1), to the office of the CEO (with a copy to the technical committee secretariat in the case of a subcommittee) within a maximum of 4 months.

The secretariat shall submit the proposed draft International Standard (DIS) to the ISO Central Secretariat in electronic format together with a completed explanatory report (ISO form 8A) and the compilation of comments and actions taken in response to comments on the final CD.

2.5.8 For time limits relating to this stage, see 2.1.6.

2.5.9 The committee stage ends when all technical issues have been resolved and a committee draft is accepted for circulation as an enquiry draft and is registered by the office of the CEO. Texts that do not conform to the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2 shall be returned to the secretariat with a request for correction before they are registered.

2.5.10 If the technical issues cannot all be resolved within the appropriate time limits, technical committees and subcommittees may wish to consider publishing an intermediate deliverable in the form of a Technical Specification (see 3.1) pending agreement on an International Standard.

2.6 Enquiry stage

2.6.1 At the enquiry stage, the enquiry draft (DIS in ISO, CDV in IEC) shall be circulated by the office of the CEO ~~within 4 weeks~~ to all national bodies for a ~~5-month~~ vote in IEC and a 3-month vote in ISO.

For policy on the use of languages, see Annex E.

National bodies shall be advised of the date by which completed ballots are to be received by the office of the CEO.

At the end of the voting period, the Chief Executive Officer shall send within 4 weeks to the chairman and secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee the results of the voting together with any comments received, for further speedy action.

2.6.2 Votes submitted by national bodies shall be explicit: positive, negative, or abstention.

A positive vote may be accompanied by editorial or technical comments, on the understanding that the secretary, in consultation with the chairman of the technical committee or subcommittee and project leader, will decide how to deal with them.

If a national body finds an enquiry draft unacceptable, it shall vote negatively and state the technical reasons. It may indicate that the acceptance of specified technical modifications will change its negative vote to one of approval, but it shall not cast an affirmative vote which is conditional on the acceptance of modifications.

2.6.3 An enquiry draft is approved if

- a) a two-thirds majority of the votes cast by the P-members of the technical committee or subcommittee are in favour, and
- b) not more than one-quarter of the total number of votes cast are negative.

Abstentions are excluded when the votes are counted, as well as negative votes not accompanied by technical reasons.

Comments received after the normal voting period are submitted to the technical committee or subcommittee secretariat for consideration at the time of the next review of the International Standard.

2.6.4 On receipt of the results of the voting and any comments, the chairman of the technical committee or subcommittee, in cooperation with its secretariat and the project leader, and in consultation with the office of the CEO, shall take one of the following courses of action:

- a) when the approval criteria of 2.6.3 are met, to register the enquiry draft, as modified, as a final draft International Standard, or

NOTE 1 In ISO, it is possible to proceed directly to publication on an optional basis provided that the committee has passed a resolution confirming its intention to skip the FDIS.

Formatted: Font: 9 pt

Optional FDIS – implementation

Where the DIS gets the necessary approval criteria, the committee leadership can decide to skip the FDIS vote and go straight to publication.

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

The committee leadership should take this decision based on the following:

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

- The DIS voting results and comments
- Knowledge of the committee and subject area
- The ISO Global Relevance policy

NOTE See Annex SM *Global relevance of ISO technical work and publications*.

This means that if a significant number of countries, with a major interest in the subject area make comments at DIS which result in substantial technical changes, then further work and an FDIS vote is recommended.

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Where the committee leadership decides to omit the FDIS vote and go straight to publication this should be communicated to the committee via a Resolution taken by correspondence with a (maximum 1 month consultation period). Approval of the resolution requires a 2/3 majority of the P-members voting.

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Projects being carried out under the Vienna Agreement must go through an FDIS vote. Discussions are on-going with CEN.

Formatted: Normal, Space Before: 3 pt, After: 3 pt, Line spacing: Exactly 10.5 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 9 pt

- b) in the case of an enquiry draft where no negative votes have been received, to proceed directly to publication, or

- c) when the approval criteria of 2.6.3 are not met;

- 1) to circulate a revised enquiry draft for voting (see 2.6.1), or

NOTE 2 A revised enquiry draft will be circulated for a voting period of 2 months, which may be extended up to 5 months in IEC and up to 3 months in ISO at the request of one or more P-members of the committee concerned.

- 2) to circulate a revised committee draft for comments, or

- 3) to discuss the enquiry draft and comments at the next meeting.

NOTE 3 Within ISO, a second (and subsequent) enquiry draft may be circulated either:

- for a voting period of 2 months, which may be extended to three months at the request of one or more P-members of the committee concerned, or
- for a voting period of 5 months (recommended when significant technical changes have been introduced).

2.6.5 Not later than 3 months after the end of the voting period, a full report shall be prepared by the secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee and circulated by the office of the CEO to the national bodies. The report shall

- a) show the result of the voting;
- b) state the decision of the chairman of the technical committee or subcommittee;
- c) reproduce the text of the comments received; and
- d) include the observations of the secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee on each of the comments submitted.

Every attempt shall be made to resolve negative votes.

If, within 2 months from the date of dispatch, two or more P-members disagree with decision 2.6.4 c)1) or 2.6.4 c)2) of the chairman, the draft shall be discussed at a meeting (see 4.2.1.3).

Committees are required to respond to all comments received.

2.6.6 When the chairman has taken the decision to proceed to the approval stage (see 2.7) or publication stage (see 2.8), the secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee shall prepare, within a maximum of 4 months after the end of the voting period and with the assistance of its editing committee, a final text and send it to the office of the CEO for preparation and circulation of the final draft International Standard.

The secretariat shall provide the office of the CEO with the text in a revisable machine-readable form and also in a format which permits validation of the revisable form.

Texts that do not conform to the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2 shall be returned to the secretariat with a request for correction before they are registered.

The revised text shall be submitted to ISO Central Secretariat in electronic format together with the decision of the chairman taken as a result of the voting, using ISO Form 13, and including a detailed indication of the decisions taken for each comment as Annex B to the ISO Form 13.

2.6.7 For time limits relating to this stage, see 2.1.6.

2.6.8 The enquiry stage ends with the registration, by the office of the CEO, of the text for circulation as a final draft International Standard or publication as an International Standard, in the case of 2.6.4b).

2.7 Approval stage

2.7.1 At the approval stage, the final draft International Standard (FDIS) shall be distributed by the office of the CEO within 3 months to all national bodies for a 2 month vote.

National bodies shall be advised of the date by which ballots are to be received by the office of the CEO.

2.7.2 Votes submitted by national bodies shall be explicit: positive, negative, or abstention.

If a national body votes affirmatively, it shall not submit any comments.

If a national body finds a final draft International Standard unacceptable, it shall vote negatively and state the technical reasons. It shall not cast an affirmative vote that is conditional on the acceptance of modifications.

2.7.3 A final draft International Standard having been circulated for voting is approved if

- a) a two-thirds majority of the votes cast by the P-members of the technical committee or subcommittee are in favour, and
- b) not more than one-quarter of the total number of votes cast are negative.

Abstentions are excluded when the votes are counted, as well as negative votes not accompanied by technical reasons.

Technical reasons for negative votes are submitted to the technical committee or subcommittee secretariat for consideration at the time of the next review of the International Standard.

2.7.4 The secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee has the responsibility of bringing any errors that may have been introduced in the preparation of the draft to the attention of the office of the CEO by the end of the voting period; further editorial or technical amendments are not acceptable at this stage.

2.7.5 Within 2 weeks after the end of the voting period, the office of the CEO shall circulate to all national bodies a report showing the result of voting and indicating either the formal approval by national bodies to issue the International Standard or formal rejection of the final draft International Standard.

Technical reasons for negative votes shall be appended for information only.

2.7.6 If the final draft International Standard has been approved in accordance with the conditions of 2.7, it shall proceed to the publication stage (see 2.8).

2.7.7 If the final draft International Standard is not approved in accordance with the conditions in 2.7, the document shall be referred back to the technical committee or subcommittee concerned for reconsideration in the light of the technical reasons submitted in support of the negative votes.

The committee may decide to:

- resubmit a modified draft as a committee draft, enquiry draft or, in ISO and JTC 1, final draft International Standard;
- publish a Technical Specification (see 3.1);
- cancel the project.

2.7.8 The approval stage ends with the circulation of the voting report (see 2.7.5) stating that the FDIS has been approved for publication as an International Standard, with the publication of a Technical Specification (see 3.1.1.2), or with the document being referred back to the committee.

2.8 Publication stage

2.8.1 Within 2 months in ISO and 1,5 months in IEC, the office of the CEO shall correct any errors indicated by the secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee, and print and distribute the International Standard.

2.8.2 The publication stage ends with the publication of the International Standard.

2.9 Maintenance of standards

The procedures for the maintenance of standards are given in the respective Supplements to the ISO/IEC Directives.

2.9.1 Introduction

Every International Standard and other deliverable published by ISO or jointly with IEC shall be subject to systematic review in order to determine whether it should be confirmed, revised/amended, converted to another form of deliverable, or withdrawn, according to Table S1.

Table S1 — Timing of systematic reviews

Deliverable	Max. elapsed time before systematic review	Max. number of times deliverable may be confirmed	Max. life
International Standard	3 years for first review; thereafter every five 5 years	Not limited	Not limited
Technical Specification (see 3.1.3)	3 years	A.1.1.1.1.4 Not limited Once recommended	A.1.1.1.1.2 Not limited 6 years recommended
Publicly Available Specification (see 3.2.4)	A.1.1.1.1.3 3 years -- no default action by ISO Central Secretariat	Once	6 years (If not converted after this period, the deliverable is proposed for withdrawal)
Technical Report (see 3.3.3)	Not specified	Not specified	Not limited

A systematic review will typically be initiated in the following circumstances:

- (all deliverables) on the initiative and as a responsibility of the secretariat of the responsible committee, typically as the result of the elapse of the specified period since publication or the

Formatted: English (U.S.)

Formatted Table

Formatted: None, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate

Formatted: None, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate

last confirmation of the document, or

- (for International Standards and Technical Specifications) a default action by ISO Central Secretariat if a systematic review of the International Standard or Technical Specification concerned has not been initiated by the secretariat of the responsible committee, or
- (all deliverables) at the request of one or more national body, or
- (all deliverables) at the request of the CEO.

The timing of a systematic review is normally based either on the year of publication or, where a document has already been confirmed, on the year in which it was last confirmed. However, it is not necessary to wait for the maximum period to elapse before a document is reviewed.

2.9.2 Review

The review period is 5 months.

NOTE Systematic reviews are now administered electronically by the ISO Central Secretariat and all ISO member bodies are invited to respond to such reviews. The purpose of the reviews has been extended to include obtaining information when member bodies have needed to make modifications in order to make ISO standards suitable for national adoption. Such modifications need to be considered by committees in order to determine whether they need to be taken into account to improve the global relevance of a standard. The final decision, to revise, confirm or withdraw a standard, remains with the P-members of the responsible committee.

After the closing of the vote, the secretariat's proposal reflecting the voting results shall be circulated to the members of the technical committee or subcommittee using Form 21. No more than 6 months after the closing of the vote~~review~~, the committee's final decision shall be submitted by the secretariat to ~~of the members of the~~ technical committee or subcommittee ~~to the committee members~~ and to the ISO Central Secretariat using ISO Form 21.

2.9.3 Interpretation of ballot results

2.9.3.1 General

Typically, a decision as to the appropriate action to take following a systematic review shall be based on a simple majority of P-members voting for a specific action. However, in some cases a more detailed analysis of the results may indicate that another interpretation may be more appropriate.

NOTE It is not feasible to provide concrete rules for all cases when interpreting the ballot results due to the variety of possible responses, degrees of implementation, and the relative importance of comments, etc.

Where voting results are not definitive and/or a decision is based on interpretation of responses the secretariat may invite approval of a proposed course of action within a specified time delay, for example within two months.

In proposing future action, due account shall be taken of the maximum possible number of confirmations and specified maximum life of the deliverable concerned (see Table S1).

2.9.3.2 Interpretation of ballot results for International Standards

Option 1: Confirmation (retention without technical change)

Where it has been verified that a document is used, that it should continue to be made available, and that no technical changes are needed, a deliverable may be confirmed. The criteria are as follows:

- the standard has been adopted unchanged for national use, either in its original form or transformed into a national standard, in at least five countries;

- no technical change to the content is envisaged;
- a simple majority of the P-members of the committee voting propose confirmation.

Confirmation of an International Standard is subject to all criteria being met. Where this is not so, the publication concerned shall either be subject to amendment or revision, or withdrawn.

~~In some cases an error may be found in the course of the systematic review that requires correction before confirmation. Such corrections shall be progressed as Technical Corrigenda as specified in ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1, 2.10.2.~~

Option 2: Amendment or revision (Retention, with change/s)

Where it has been verified that a document is used, that it should continue to be made available, but that technical changes are needed, a deliverable may be proposed for amendment or revision. The criteria are as follows:

- the standard has been adopted as the basis for a national standard, with or without change, in at least five countries;
- one or more countries have identified significant reason(s) for change.

If a simple majority of the P-members of the committee considers there is a need for amendment or revision an item may be registered as an approved work item (stage 20.00). In such cases the original 5 month period defined for the systematic review is considered sufficient, and no additional vote for a new work item is required to approve the establishment of a revision or amendment. In other cases, a detailed justification shall be included with any proposals for amendment or revision. Where an amendment or revision is not immediately started following approval by the committee, it is recommended that the project is first registered as a preliminary work item. When it is eventually proposed for registration at stage 20.00, reference shall be made to the results of the preceding systematic review.

A.1.1.1.1.4 Where it is decided that the International Standard needs to be revised or amended, it becomes a new project and shall be added to the programme of work of the technical committee or subcommittee. The steps for revision or amendment are the same as those for preparation of a new standard (see ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1, clauses 2.3 to 2.8), and include the establishment of target dates for the completion of the relevant stages. ~~An amendment or revision shall be progressed as specified in ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1, 2.10.3.~~

For minor changes, e.g. updating and editorial changes, that do not impact the technical content, a shortened procedure called "minor revision" may be applied. This is comprised only of the proposal for a minor revision by the committee (through a resolution), approval and publication stages (see ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1, clauses 2.7 and 2.8). Subsequent to the resolution of the responsible technical committee and consultation of the responsible ISO Technical Programme Manager, a final draft of the revised deliverable shall be circulated for a 2-month vote.

In case of a joint project with CEN under the Vienna Agreement, the period for parallel voting is 3 months.

Option 3: Withdrawal

In the case of the proposed withdrawal of an International Standard, the national bodies shall be informed by the CEO of the decision of the technical committee or subcommittee, with an invitation to inform the office of the CEO within 3 months if they object to that decision. This 3 month period may be extended to 5 months at the request of one or more national bodies.

Any objection received shall be referred to the responsible committee ~~Technical Management Board~~ for consideration and decision.

2.9.3.3 Conversion to an International Standard (Technical Specifications and Publicly

Formatted: None, Space Before: 0 pt, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate

Formatted: Normal

Available Standards only)

In addition to the three basic options of confirmation, amendment or revision, or withdrawal, in the cases of the systematic review of Technical Specifications and Publicly Available Standards a fourth option is their conversion to an International Standard.

To initiate conversion to an International Standard, a text, up-dated as appropriate, is submitted to the normal development procedures as specified for an International Standard.

The conversion procedure will typically start with a DIS vote. Where changes considered to be required are judged as being so significant as to require a full review in the committee prior to DIS ballot, a revised version of the document shall be submitted for review and ballot as a CD.

2.9.4 Reinstatement of withdrawn standards

If, following withdrawal of an International Standard, a committee determines that it is still needed, it may propose that the standard be reinstated. The standard shall be issued either as a draft International Standard or as a final draft International Standard, as decided by the committee, for voting by the member bodies. The usual approval criteria shall apply. If approved, the standard shall be published as a new edition with a new date of publication. The foreword shall explain that the standard results from the reinstatement of the previous edition.

2.10 Technical corrigenda and amendments**2.10.1 General**

A published International Standard may subsequently be modified by the publication of

- a technical corrigendum ~~(or a corrected reprint of the current edition);~~
- ~~an amendment; or-~~
- a revision (as part of the maintenance procedure in 2.9).

Technical corrigenda and amendments are normally published as separate documents, the edition of the International Standard affected remaining in print.

NOTE In case of revision a new edition of the International Standard will be issued.

2.10.2 Technical corrigenda

A technical corrigendum is issued to correct ~~either~~

~~a) a technical error or ambiguity in an International Standard, a Technical Specification, a Publicly Available Specification or a Technical Report, inadvertently introduced either in drafting or in printing and which could lead to incorrect or unsafe application of the publication; or~~

~~a) information that has become outdated since publication, provided that the modification has no effect on the technical normative elements (see ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, 2011, 6.3) of the standard.~~

NOTE—Technical corrigenda are not issued to correct errors that can be assumed to have no consequences in the application of the publication, for example minor printing errors.

Technical corrigenda are not issued to update information that has become outdated since publication.

Suspected technical errors ~~or outdated information~~ shall be brought to the attention of the secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee concerned. After confirmation by the secretariat and chairman, if necessary in consultation with the project leader and P-members of the technical committee or subcommittee, the secretariat shall submit to the office of the CEO a proposal for correction, with an explanation of the need to do so.

Formatted: PARAGRAPH, No bullets or numbering

Formatted: PARAGRAPH

The Chief Executive Officer shall decide, in consultation with the secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee, and bearing in mind both the financial consequences to the organization and the interests of users of the publication, whether to publish a technical corrigendum or a corrected or updated reprint of the existing edition of the publication (see also 2.10.4). In general, a technical corrigendum will not be issued for an International Standard that is older than 3 years.

2.10.3 Amendments

An amendment alters and/or adds to previously agreed technical provisions in an existing International Standard.

The procedure for developing and publishing an amendment shall be as described in 2.3 (ISO and JTC 1), or the review and maintenance procedures (see IEC Supplement) and 2.4 to 2.8.

At the approval stage (2.7), the Chief Executive Officer shall decide, in consultation with the secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee, and bearing in mind both the financial consequences to the organization and the interests of users of the International Standard, whether to publish an amendment or a new edition of the International Standard, incorporating the amendment. (See also 2.10.4.)

NOTE Where it is foreseen that there will be frequent *additions* to the provisions of an International Standard, the possibility should be borne in mind at the outset of developing these additions as a series of parts (see ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2).

2.10.4 Avoidance of proliferation of modifications

No more than 2 separate documents in the form of technical corrigenda or amendments shall be published modifying a current International Standard. The development of a third such document shall result in publication of a new edition of the International Standard.

2.11 Maintenance agencies

When a technical committee or subcommittee has developed a standard that will require frequent modification, it may decide that a maintenance agency is required. Rules concerning the designation of maintenance agencies are given in Annex G.

2.12 Registration authorities

When a technical committee or subcommittee has developed a standard that includes registration provisions, a registration authority is required. Rules concerning the designation of registration authorities are given in Annex H.

2.13 Copyright

The copyright for all drafts and International Standards and other publications belongs to ISO, IEC or ISO and IEC, respectively as represented by the office of the CEO.

The content of, for example, an International Standard may originate from a number of sources, including existing national standards, articles published in scientific or trade journals, original research and development work, descriptions of commercialized products, etc. These sources may be subject to one or more rights.

In ISO and IEC, there is an understanding that original material contributed to become a part of an ISO, IEC or ISO/IEC publication can be copied and distributed within the ISO and/or IEC systems (as relevant) as part of the consensus building process, this being without prejudice to the rights of the original copyright owner to exploit the original text elsewhere. Where material is already subject to copyright, the right should be granted to ISO and/or IEC to reproduce and circulate the material. This is frequently done without recourse to a written agreement, or at most to a simple written statement of acceptance. Where contributors wish a formal signed agreement concerning copyright of any submissions they make to ISO and/or IEC, such requests must be addressed to ISO Central Secretariat or the IEC Central Office, respectively.

Attention is drawn to the fact that the respective members of ISO and IEC have the right to adopt and re-publish any respective ISO and/or IEC standard as their national standard. Similar forms of endorsement do or may exist (for example, with regional standardization organizations).

2.14 Reference to patented items (see also Annex I)

~~All working drafts and committee drafts shall include a note referring to the possible existence of patent rights, as follows:~~

~~a) when no patent rights have been identified:~~

~~"Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this document may be the subject of patent rights. ISO shall not be held responsible for identifying any and all such rights."~~

~~b) when patent rights have been identified:~~

~~"Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this document may be the subject of patent rights other than those identified above. ISO shall not be held responsible for identifying any and all such rights."~~

~~For further information, refer to Annex F of the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.~~

Formatted: Normal, Indent: Left: 0 cm

Formatted: (Asian) Japanese

2.14.1 If, in exceptional situations, technical reasons justify such a step, there is no objection in principle to preparing an International Standard in terms which include the use of items covered by patent rights – defined as patents, utility models and other statutory rights based on inventions, including any published applications for any of the foregoing – even if the terms of the standard are such that there are no alternative means of compliance. The rules given below and in the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, 2011, Annex F shall be applied.

2.14.2 If technical reasons justify the preparation of a document in terms which include the use of items covered by patent rights, the following procedures shall be complied with:

- a) The originator of a proposal for a document shall draw the attention of the committee to any patent rights of which the originator is aware and considers to cover any item of the proposal. Any party involved in the preparation of a document shall draw the attention of the committee to any patent rights of which it becomes aware during any stage in the development of the document.
- b) If the proposal is accepted on technical grounds, the originator shall ask any holder of such identified patent rights for a statement that the holder would be willing to negotiate worldwide licences under his rights with applicants throughout the world on reasonable and non-discriminatory terms and conditions. Such negotiations are left to the parties concerned and are performed outside ISO and/or IEC. A record of the right holder's statement shall be placed in the registry of the ISO Central Secretariat or IEC Central Office as appropriate, and shall be referred to in the introduction to the relevant document [see ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, 2011, F.3]. If the right holder does not provide such a statement, the committee concerned shall not proceed with inclusion of an item covered by a patent right in the document without authorization from ISO Council or IEC Council Board as appropriate.
- c) A document shall not be published until the statements of the holders of all identified patent rights have been received, unless the council board concerned gives authorization.

2.14.3 Should it be revealed after publication of a document that licences under patent rights, which appear to cover items included in the document, cannot be obtained under reasonable and non-discriminatory terms and conditions, the document shall be referred back to the relevant committee for further consideration.

3 Development of other deliverables

3.1 Technical Specifications

3.1.1 Technical Specifications may be prepared and published under the following circumstances and conditions.

3.1.1.1 When the subject in question is still under development or where for any other reason there is the future but not immediate possibility of an agreement to publish an International

Standard, the technical committee or subcommittee may decide, by following the procedure set out in 2.3, that the publication of a Technical Specification would be appropriate. The procedure for preparation of such a Technical Specification shall be as set out in 2.4 and 2.5. The decision to publish the resulting document as a Technical Specification shall require a two-thirds majority vote of the P-members voting of the technical committee or subcommittee. The reasons for publishing the Technical Specification, and an explanation of its relationship to the expected future International Standard, shall be given in the foreword.

When a Technical Specification is used for “pre-standardization purposes”, the following text, completed as appropriate, shall be included in the Foreword:

“This document is being issued in the Technical Specification series of publications (according to the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1, 3.1.1.1) as a “prospective standard for provisional application” in the field of ... because there is an urgent need for guidance on how standards in this field should be used to meet an identified need.

This document is not to be regarded as an “International Standard”. It is proposed for provisional application so that information and experience of its use in practice may be gathered. Comments on the content of this document should be sent to the ...[ISO Central Secretariat or IEC Central Office]...

A review of this Technical Specification will be carried out not later than 3 years after its publication with the options of: extension for another 3 years; conversion into an International Standard; or withdrawal.”

In IEC, Technical Specifications are subject to the same review and maintenance procedures as IEC Standards. The final paragraph of the above text will therefore need to be replaced by the relevant information on stability dates (see also IEC Supplement to the ISO/IEC Directives).

3.1.1.2 When the required support cannot be obtained for a final draft International Standard to pass the approval stage (see 2.7), or in case of doubt concerning consensus, the technical committee or subcommittee may decide, by a two-thirds majority vote of P-members voting, that the document should be published in the form of a Technical Specification. The reasons why the required support could not be obtained shall be given in the foreword to the Technical Specification.

3.1.2 When the P-members of a technical committee or subcommittee have agreed upon the publication of a Technical Specification, the draft specification shall be submitted in machine-readable form by the secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee to the office of the Chief Executive Officer within 4 months for publication.

3.1.3 Technical Specifications shall be subject to review by the technical committee or subcommittee not later than 3 years after their publication. The aim of such review shall be to re-examine the situation which resulted in the publication of a Technical Specification and if possible to achieve the agreement necessary for the publication of an International Standard to replace the Technical Specification. In IEC, the date for this review is based on the stability date which shall be agreed in advance of the publication of the Technical Specification (review date).

3.2 Publicly Available Specifications (PAS)

The procedures set out in 2.3 apply to the development of a PAS.

Formatted: English (U.S.)

3.2.1 A PAS may be an intermediate specification, published prior to the development of a full International Standard, or, in IEC may be a “dual logo” publication published in collaboration with an external organization. It is a document not fulfilling the requirements for a standard.

3.2.2 A proposal for submission of a PAS may be made by an A-liaison or D-liaison (see 1.17.2 and 1.17.3) or by any P-member of the committee.

3.2.3 The PAS is published after verification of the presentation and checking that there is no conflict with existing International Standards by the committee concerned and following simple majority approval of the P-members voting of the committee concerned.

3.2.4 A PAS shall remain valid for an initial maximum period of 3 years. The validity may be extended for a single period up to a maximum of 3 years, at the end of which it shall be published as another type of normative document, or shall be withdrawn.

3.3 Technical Reports

3.3.1 When a technical committee or subcommittee has collected data of a different kind from that which is normally published as an International Standard (this may include, for example, data obtained from a survey carried out among the national bodies, data on work in other international organizations or data on the "state of the art" in relation to standards of national bodies on a particular subject), the technical committee or subcommittee may decide, by a simple majority vote of P-members voting, to request the Chief Executive Officer to publish such data in the form of a Technical Report. The document shall be entirely informative in nature and shall not contain matter implying that it is normative. It shall clearly explain its relationship to normative aspects of the subject which are, or will be, dealt with in International Standards related to the subject. The Chief Executive Officer, if necessary in consultation with the technical management board, shall decide whether to publish the document as a Technical Report.

3.3.2 When the P-members of a technical committee or subcommittee have agreed upon the publication of a Technical Report, the draft report shall be submitted in machine-readable form by the secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee to the Chief Executive Officer within 4 months for publication.

3.3.3 It is recommended that Technical Reports are regularly reviewed by the committee responsible, to ensure that they remain valid. Withdrawal of a Technical Report is decided by the technical committee or subcommittee responsible.

4 Meetings

4.1 General

4.1.1 Technical committees and subcommittees shall use modern electronic means to carry out their work (for example, e-mail, groupware and teleconferencing) wherever possible. A meeting of a technical committee or subcommittee should be convened only when it is necessary to discuss committee drafts (CD) or other matters of substance which cannot be settled by other means.

4.1.2 The technical committee secretariat should look ahead with a view to drawing up, in consultation with the office of the CEO, a planned minimum 2-year programme of meetings of the technical committee and its subcommittees and, if possible, its working groups, taking account of the programme of work.

4.1.3 In planning meetings, account should be taken of the possible advantage of grouping meetings of technical committees and subcommittees dealing with related subjects, in order to improve communication and to limit the burden of attendance at meetings by delegates who participate in several technical committees or subcommittees.

4.1.4 In planning meetings, account should also be taken of the advantages for the speedy preparation of drafts of holding a meeting of the editing committee immediately after the meeting of the technical committee or subcommittee and at the same place.

4.2 Procedure for calling a meeting

For information relating to hosting meetings, refer to Annex SF.

4.2.1 Technical committee and subcommittee meetings

4.2.1.1 The date and place of a meeting shall be subject to an agreement between the chairman and the secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee concerned, the Chief Executive Officer and the national body acting as host. In the case of a subcommittee meeting, the subcommittee secretariat shall first consult with the secretariat of the parent technical committee in order to ensure coordination of meetings (see also 4.1.3).

4.2.1.2 A national body wishing to act as host for a particular meeting shall contact the Chief Executive Officer and the technical committee or subcommittee secretariat concerned.

The national body shall first ascertain that there are no restrictions imposed by its country to the entry of representatives of any P-member of the technical committee or subcommittee for the purpose of attending the meeting.

The hosting organizations are advised to verify and provide information on access means to meeting facilities. This includes availability of lifts or ramps at the meeting location as well as accessible public transport to the meeting facilities

4.2.1.3 The secretariat shall ensure that arrangements are made for the agenda to be circulated by the office of the CEO (in the IEC) or by the secretariat with a copy to the office of the CEO (in ISO) at the latest 4 months before the date of the meeting. All other basic documents, for example new work item proposals, shall be distributed by the same deadline.

Only those committee drafts for which the compilation of comments will be available at least 6 weeks before the meeting shall be included on the agenda and be eligible for discussion at the meeting.

Any other working documents, including compilations of comments on drafts to be discussed at the meeting, shall be distributed not less than 6 weeks in advance of the meeting.

4.2.2 Working group meetings

4.2.2.1 Working groups shall use modern electronic means to carry out their work (for example, e-mail, groupware and teleconferencing) wherever possible. When a meeting needs to be held, notification by the convenor of the meetings of a working group shall be sent to its members and to the secretariat of the parent committee, at least 6 weeks in advance of the meeting.

Arrangements for meetings shall be made between the convenor and the member of the working group in whose country the meeting is to be held. The latter member shall be responsible for all practical working arrangements.

4.2.2.2 If a working group meeting is to be held in conjunction with a meeting of the parent committee, the convenor shall coordinate arrangements with the secretariat of the parent committee. In particular it shall be ensured that the working group members receive all general information for the meeting, which is sent to delegates to the meeting of the parent committee.

4.3 Languages at meetings

The languages at meetings are English, French and Russian, and meetings are conducted in any one or more of these.

The national body for the Russian Federation provides all interpretation and translation into or from the Russian language.

The chairman and secretariat are responsible for dealing with the question of language at a meeting in a manner acceptable to the participants following the general rules of ISO or IEC, as appropriate. (See also Annex E.)

4.4 Cancellation of meetings

Every possible effort shall be made to avoid cancellation or postponement of a meeting once it has been convened. Nevertheless, if the agenda and basic documents are not available within the time required by 4.2.1.3, then the Chief Executive Officer has the right to cancel the meeting.

4.5 Distribution of documents

For requirements relating to document distribution, refer to Annex SBAnnex_SF. A copy of the agenda and calling notice for a committee meeting shall be made available to the ISO Central Secretariat for information.

5 Appeals

5.1 General

5.1.1 National bodies have the right of appeal

- a) to the parent technical committee on a decision of a subcommittee;
- b) to the technical management board on a decision of a technical committee;
- c) to the council board on a decision of the technical management board, within 3 months in ISO and 2 months in IEC of the decision in question.

The decision of the council board on any case of appeal is final.

5.1.2 A P-member of a technical committee or subcommittee may appeal against any action, or inaction, on the part of the technical committee or subcommittee, when the P-member considers that such action or inaction is

- a) not in accordance with
 - the Statutes and Rules of Procedure;
 - the ISO/IEC Directives; or
- b) not in the best interests of international trade and commerce, or such public factors as safety, health or environment.

5.1.3 Matters under appeal may be either technical or administrative in nature.

Appeals on decisions concerning new work item proposals, committee drafts, enquiry drafts and final draft International Standards are only eligible for consideration if

- questions of principle are involved, or
- the contents of a draft may be detrimental to the reputation of ISO or IEC.

5.1.4 All appeals shall be fully documented to support the P-member's concern.

5.2 Appeal against a subcommittee decision

5.2.1 The documented appeal shall be submitted by the P-member to the secretariat of the parent technical committee, with a copy to the Chief Executive Officer.

5.2.2 Upon receipt, the secretariat of the parent technical committee shall advise all its P-members of the appeal and take immediate action, by correspondence or at a meeting, to consider and decide on the appeal, consulting the Chief Executive Officer in the process.

5.2.3 If the technical committee supports its subcommittee, then the P-member which initiated the appeal may either

- accept the technical committee decision, or
- appeal against it.

5.3 Appeal against a technical committee decision

5.3.1 Appeals against a technical committee decision may be of 2 kinds:

- an appeal arising out of 5.2.3 above, or
- an appeal against an original decision of a technical committee.

5.3.2 The documented appeal shall, in all cases, be submitted to the Chief Executive Officer, with a copy to the chairman and secretariat of the technical committee.

5.3.3 The Chief Executive Officer shall, following whatever consultations he deems appropriate, refer the appeal together with his comments to the technical management board within one month after receipt of the appeal.

5.3.4 The technical management board shall decide whether an appeal shall be further processed or not. If the decision is in favour of proceeding, the Chairman of the technical management board shall form a conciliation panel.

The conciliation panel shall hear the appeal within 3 months and attempt to resolve the difference of opinion as soon as practicable. The conciliation panel shall give a final report within 3 months. If the conciliation panel is unsuccessful in resolving the difference of opinion, this shall be reported to the Chief Executive Officer, together with recommendations on how the matter should be settled.

5.3.5 The Chief Executive Officer, on receipt of the report of the conciliation panel, shall inform the technical management board, which will make its decision.

5.4 Appeal against a technical management board decision

An appeal against a decision of the technical management board shall be submitted to the Chief Executive Officer with full documentation on all stages of the case.

The Chief Executive Officer shall refer the appeal together with his comments to the members of the council board within one month after receipt of the appeal.

The council board shall make its decision within 3 months.

5.5 Progress of work during an appeal process

When an appeal is against a decision respecting work in progress, the work shall be continued, up to and including the approval stage (see 2.7).

ISO/IEC ANNEXES



Annex A (normative)

Guides

A.1 Introduction

In addition to International Standards, Technical Specifications, Publicly Available Specifications and Technical Reports prepared by technical committees, ISO and IEC publish Guides on matters related to international standardization. Guides shall be drafted in accordance with the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.

Guides shall not be prepared by technical committees and subcommittees. They may be prepared by an ISO Policy Development Committee, an IEC Advisory Committee, an ISO Technical Advisory Group, or a Joint ISO/IEC Coordination Group. These bodies are referred to below as the "Committee or Group responsible for the project".

The procedure for preparation and publication of a Guide is as described below.

A.2 Proposal stage

The procedure for proposing a new work item, and the criteria for its acceptance, shall be decided by the body to which the Committee or Group responsible for the project reports.

Once a project is accepted, the secretariat of the Committee or Group responsible for the project shall ensure that the appropriate interests in ISO and IEC are informed.

A.3 Preparatory stage

The Committee or Group responsible for the project shall ensure that the appropriate interests in ISO and IEC have the opportunity to be represented during the preparation of the working draft.

A.4 Committee stage

Once a working draft is available for circulation as a committee draft, the secretariat of the Committee or Group responsible for the project shall arrange for it to be circulated for comments to the members of the Committee or Group.

The time limit for replies shall normally be 3 months.

The Committee or Group responsible for the project shall examine the comments received and prepare a revised draft Guide.

A.5 Enquiry stage

A.5.1 The office of the CEOs shall circulate both the English and French texts of the revised draft Guide to all national bodies for a 4-month vote.

A.5.2 The draft Guide is approved for publication as a Guide if not more than one-quarter of the votes cast are negative, abstentions being excluded when the votes are counted.

In the case of ISO/IEC Guides, the draft shall be submitted for approval to the national bodies of both ISO and IEC. The national bodies of both organizations need to approve the document if it is to be published as an ISO/IEC Guide.

If this condition is satisfied for only one of the organizations, ISO or IEC, the Guide may be published under the name of the approving organization only, unless the Committee or Group responsible for the project decides to apply the procedure set out in A.5.3.

A.5.3 If a draft Guide is not approved, or if it is approved with comments the acceptance of which would improve consensus, the chairman of the Committee or Group responsible for the project may

decide to submit an amended draft for a 2-month vote. The conditions for acceptance of the amended draft are the same as in A.5.2.

A.6 Publication stage

The publication stage shall be the responsibility of the office of the CEO of the organization to which the Committee or Group responsible for the project belongs.

In the case of a Joint ISO/IEC Group, the responsibility shall be decided by agreement between the Chief Executive Officers.

A.7 Withdrawal of a Guide

The Committee or Group responsible for the Guide shall be responsible for deciding if the Guide shall be withdrawn. The formal withdrawal shall be ratified by the technical management board (TMB) in accordance with its normal procedures.

Annex B (normative)

ISO/IEC procedures for liaison and work allocation

B.1 Introduction

By the ISO/IEC Agreement of 1976 ²⁾, ISO and IEC together form a system for international standardization as a whole. For this system to operate efficiently, the following procedures are agreed for coordination and allocation of work between the technical committees and subcommittees of both organizations.

B.2 General considerations

The allocation of work between ISO and IEC is based on the agreed principle that all questions relating to international standardization in the electrical and electronic engineering fields are reserved to IEC, the other fields being reserved to ISO and that allocation of responsibility for matters of international standardization where the relative contribution of electrical and non-electrical technologies is not immediately evident will be settled by mutual agreement between the organizations.

Questions of coordination and work allocation may arise when establishing a new ISO or IEC technical committee, or as a result of the activities of an existing technical committee.

The following levels of coordination and work allocation agreement are available. Matters should be raised at the next higher level only after all attempts to resolve them at the lower levels have failed.

- a) **Formal liaisons** between ISO and IEC committees for normal inter-committee cooperation.
- b) **Organizational consultations**, including technical experts and representatives of the Chief Executive Officers, for cases where technical coordination may have an effect on the future activities of the organizations in a larger sense than the point under consideration.
- c) **Decisions on work allocation**
 - by the technical management boards or, if necessary,
 - the ISO/IEC Joint Technical Advisory Board (JTAB).

Questions affecting both ISO and IEC, on which it has not proved possible to obtain a common decision by the ISO Technical Management Board and the IEC Standardization Management Board, are referred to the ISO/IEC Joint Technical Advisory Board (JTAB) for decision (see 1.3.1).

B.3 Establishing new technical committees

Whenever a proposal to establish a new technical committee is made to the national bodies of ISO or of IEC respectively, the proposal shall also be submitted to the other organization requesting comment and/or agreement. As a result of these consultations, two cases may arise:

- a) the opinion is unanimous that the work should be carried out in one of the organizations;
- b) opinions are divided.

In case a), formal action may then be taken to establish the new technical committee according to the unanimous opinion.

In case b), a meeting of experts in the field concerned shall be arranged with representatives of the Chief Executive Officers with a view to reaching a satisfactory agreement for allocation of the work (i.e., organizational level). If agreement is reached at this level, formal action may be taken by the appropriate organization to implement the agreement.

In the case of disagreement after these consultations, the matter may be referred by either organization to the ISO/IEC Joint Technical Advisory Board (JTAB).

2) ISO Council resolutions 49/1976 and 50/1976 and IEC Administrative Circular No. 13/1977.

B.4 Coordinating and allocating work between ISO and IEC technical committees

B.4.1 Formal liaison at TC level

Most coordination needs arising between individual ISO and IEC committees are successfully dealt with through formal technical liaison arrangements. These arrangements, when requested by either organization, shall be honoured by the other organization. Requests for formal liaison arrangements are controlled by the offices of the CEOs. The requesting organization shall specify the type of liaison required, such as:

- a) full or selective exchange of committee documents;
- b) regular or selective attendance of liaison representatives at meetings;
- c) participation in a standing coordination (or steering) committee for selected ISO and IEC technical committees;
- d) setting up of a Joint Working Group (JWG).

B.4.2 Details of agreement

B.4.2.1 Continual efforts shall be made to minimize the overlap areas between IEC and ISO by entrusting areas of work to one of the two organizations.

For areas of work so entrusted, IEC and ISO shall agree through the JTAB on how the views and interests of the other organization are to be fully taken into account.

B.4.2.2 Five working modes of cooperation have been established, as follows:

Mode 1 – Informative relation

One organization is fully entrusted with a specific work area and keeps the other fully informed of all progress.

Mode 2 – Contributive relation

One organization should take the lead of the work and the other should make written contributions where considered appropriate during the progress of this work. This relation also includes the exchange of full information.

Mode 3 – Subcontracting relation

One organization is fully entrusted with the realization of the work on an identified item, but due to specialization of the other, a part of the work is subcontracted and that part is prepared under the responsibility of the second organization. Necessary arrangements shall be made to guarantee the correct integration of the resulting subcontracted work into the main part of the programme. To this end, the enquiry and approval stages are handled by the organization being the main contractor for the standardization task.

Mode 4 – Collaborative relation

One organization takes the lead in the activities, but the work sessions and meetings receive delegates from the other who have observer status and who ensure the technical liaison with the other organization. Such observers should have the right to intervene in the debate but have no right to vote. The full flow of information is oriented through this liaison.

Mode 5 – Integrated liaison

Joint Working Groups and Joint Technical Committees ensure integrated meetings for handling together the realization of standards under a principle of total equality of participation.

Joint Working Groups between technical committees of the two organizations shall operate in accordance with 1.12.6.

B.4.2.3 The allocation of work between IEC and ISO for potentially overlapping areas will be set out as required in schedules or programmes which, when agreed by the relevant parties, will form addenda to this agreement.

A consequence of this agreement is that the parties agree to cross-refer to the relevant standards of the other in the respective competent fields of interest.

When the standard being referred to is updated, it is the responsibility of the body making the reference to take care of the updating of the reference where appropriate.

B.4.2.4 For work for which one organization has assumed responsibility and for which there will be subcontracting of work to the other, the fullest account shall be taken of the interests participating in the subcontracted work in defining the objectives of that work.

B.4.2.5 The necessary procedures for enquiry and approval shall be realized by the organization entrusted with a particular standardization task, except as otherwise agreed by the two technical management boards~~TMBs~~.

B.4.2.6 For standards developed under the Mode 5 – Integrated liaison, the committee, enquiry and approval stages shall be carried out in parallel in both ISO and IEC. The committee/ organization with the administrative responsibility for the project shall submit drafts for the committee, enquiry and approval stages to the other organization two weeks prior to the circulation date.

B.4.2.7 When the enquiry draft has not fulfilled the approval criteria (see 2.6.3) in one of the organizations, then:

- the officers of the committees involved in the joint working group may select one of options given in 2.6.4 c) or
- in exceptional circumstances, if agreed between the officers of the ISO and IEC committees involved in the joint working group and the offices of the CEO, the project may proceed as a single logo standard of the organization in which the enquiry draft was approved. The joint working group is automatically disbanded.

B.4.2.8 If the final draft International Standard is not approved in accordance of the conditions in 2.7.3 then:

- the committees involved in the joint working group may select one of the options given in 2.7.7, noting that in IEC the circulation of a second final draft International Standard is not allowed and will require a derogation of the TMB or
- in exceptional circumstances, if agreed between the officers of the ISO and IEC committees involved in the joint working group and the offices of the CEO, the standard may be published as a single logo standard of the organization in which the final draft International Standard was approved. The joint working group is automatically disbanded.

B.4.2.9 Standards developed under the Mode 5 – Integrated liaison via a joint working group between ISO and IEC are published by the organization of the committee having administrative responsibility. That organization assigns the reference number of the standard and owns the copyright of the standard. The standard carries the logo of the other organization and may be sold by both organizations. The foreword of the International Standard will identify all the committees responsible for the development. For those standards where the committee with the administrative responsibility is in the IEC, then the foreword will also give the ISO voting results. In the case of multi-part standards, some parts being under ISO responsibility and some being under IEC responsibility, a number in the 80000 series is assigned (e.g. ISO 80000-1, IEC 80000-6).

B.4.2.10 The maintenance procedures to be used for standards developed under the Mode 5 – Integrated liaison will be those currently applied in the organization which has the committee with the administrative responsibility.

B.4.2.11 If there is a reason, during the development of the project, to change from one mode of operation to another, a recommendation shall be made by both technical committees concerned and submitted to the two technical management board~~TMBs~~ for information.

B.4.3 Cooperation of secretariats

The secretariats of the technical committees/subcommittees~~TC/SCs~~ from the two organizations concerned shall cooperate on the implementation of this agreement. There shall be a complete information flow on on-going work and availability on demand to each other of working documents, in accordance with normal procedures.

Annex C (normative)

Justification of proposals for the establishment of standards

C.1 General

C.1.1 Because of the large financial resources and manpower involved and the necessity to allocate these according to the needs, it is important that any standardization activity begin by identifying the needs, determining the aims of the standard(s) to be prepared and the interests that may be affected. This will, moreover, help to ensure that the standards produced will cover appropriately the aspects required and be market relevant for the affected sectors. Any new activity shall therefore be reasonably justified before it is begun.

C.1.2 It is understood that, whatever conclusions may be drawn on the basis of the annex, a prerequisite of any new work to be commenced would be a clear indication of the readiness of a sufficient number of relevant interested parties to allocate necessary manpower, funds and to take an active part in the work.

C.1.3 This annex sets out rules for proposing and justifying new work, so that proposals will offer to others the clearest possible idea of the purposes and extent of the work, in order to ensure that standardization resources are really allocated by the parties concerned and are used to the best effect.

C.1.4 This annex does not contain rules of procedure for implementing and monitoring the guidelines contained in it, nor does it deal with the administrative mechanism which should be established to this effect.

~~**C.1.5** This annex is intended primarily for use in the field of international standardization, but may be used in other fields.~~

C.1.56 This annex is addressed primarily to the proposer of any kind of new work to be started but may serve as a tool for those who will analyse such a proposal or comment on it, as well as for the body responsible for taking a decision on the proposal.

C.2 Terms and definitions

C.2.1

proposal for new work

proposal for a new field of technical activity or for a new work item

C.2.2

proposal for a new field of technical activity

proposal for the preparation of (a) standard(s) in a field that is not covered by an existing committee (such as a technical committee, subcommittee or project committee) of the organization to which the proposal is made

C.2.3

proposal for a new work item

proposal for the preparation of a standard or a series of related standards in the field covered by an existing committee (such as a technical committee) of the organization to which the proposal is made

C.3 General principles

C.3.1 Any proposal for new work shall lie within the scope of the organization to which it is submitted.

NOTE For example, the objects of ISO are laid down in Article 2.1 of its Constitution and of IEC in Article 2 of its Statutes.

C.3.2 The documentation justifying new work in ISO and IEC shall make a substantial case for the market relevance of the proposal.~~Any proposal for new work shall include (at least) the following elements, in order to assess and justify the need for such work:~~

- ~~• title;~~
- ~~• scope;~~
- ~~• purpose and justification;~~
- ~~• programme of work;~~
- ~~• the resources to be provided;~~
- ~~• relevant documents;~~
- ~~• cooperation and liaison.~~

C.3.3 The documentation justifying new work in ISO and IEC shall provide solid information as a foundation for informed ISO or IEC national body voting.~~The elements listed in C.3.2 may have slightly different interpretation for a new field of technical activity (proposal for a new committee) and for a new work item (proposal for a new standard in an existing committee). Their content is specified in more detail in C.4 and C.5. Examples of such proposals are offered in C.7 and C.8. (These examples are in considerable detail to illustrate the principles).~~

C.3.4 Within the ISO and IEC systems, the onus is considered to be placed on the proposer to provide the proper documentation to support principles C.3.2 and C.3.3 stated above.

Formatted: Not Highlight

C.4 **Elements to be clarified when proposing a new field of technical activity or a new work item**~~(new committee)~~

Formatted: Normal

C.4.1 Proposals for new work shall include the following fields of information (C.4.2 to C.4.13)

Formatted: Normal

C.4.2 **Title**

The title shall indicate clearly yet concisely the field of technical activity or the new work item which the proposal is intended to cover.

Example 1: (proposal for a new technical activity) "Machine tools".

Example 2: (proposal for a new work item) "Electrotechnical products – Basic environmental testing procedures".

C.4.3 **Scope**

C.4.3.1 For new fields of technical activity

The scope shall precisely define the limits of the field of activity. Scopes shall not repeat general aims and principles governing the work of the organization but shall indicate the specific area concerned.

Example: "Standardization of all machine tools for the working of metal, wood and plastics, operating by removal of material or by pressure".

C.4.3.2 For new work items

The scope shall give a clear indication of the coverage of the proposed new work item and, if necessary for clarity, exclusions shall be stated.

Example 1:

This standard lists a series of environmental test procedures, and their severities, designed to assess the ability of electrotechnical products to perform under expected conditions of service.

Although primarily intended for such applications, this standard may be used in other fields where desired.

Formatted: Font: 8 pt, Italic

Formatted: Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt

Formatted: Font: 8 pt, Italic

Formatted: Font: 8 pt, Italic

Formatted: Font: 8 pt

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.5 cm, Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt

Formatted: Font: 8 pt

Formatted: Font: 8 pt

Other environmental tests, specific to the individual types of specimen, may be included in the relevant specifications.

Formatted: Font: 8 pt

Example 2:

Standardization in the field of fisheries and aquaculture, including, but not limited to, terminology, technical specifications for equipment and for their operation, characterization of aquaculture sites and maintenance of appropriate physical, chemical and biological conditions, environmental monitoring, data reporting, traceability and waste disposal.

Formatted: Font: 8 pt

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.5 cm, Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt

Excluded:

- methods of analysis of food products (covered by ISO/TC 34);
- personal protective clothing (covered by ISO/TC 94);
- environmental monitoring (covered by ISO/TC 207).

Formatted: Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt, Bulleted + Level: 1 + Aligned at: 1.14 cm + Indent at: 1.77 cm

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.5 cm, Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt

If seemingly similar or related work is already in the scope of other committees of the organization or in other organizations, the proposed scope shall distinguish between the proposed work and the other work.

C.4.2.3 The proposer shall indicate whether his or her proposal could be dealt with by widening the scope of an existing committee or by establishing a new committee.

C.4.4 Purpose and justification

Details based on a critical study of the following elements shall be given wherever practicable:

- a) the specific aims and reason for the standardization activity, with particular emphasis on the aspects of standardization to be covered, the problems it is expected to solve or the difficulties it is intended to overcome;
- b) the main interests that might benefit from or be affected by the activity, such as industry, consumers, trade, governments, distributors;
- c) feasibility of the activity: Are there factors that could hinder the successful establishment or general application of the standard(s)?

Example: Does it appear feasible to standardize a single practice for general use, or will it be more practical to standardize more than one practice or level?

- d) timeliness of the standards to be produced: Is the technology reasonably stabilized? If not, how much time is likely to be available before advances in technology may render the proposed standards outdated? Are the proposed standards required as a basis for the future development of the technology in question?
- e) urgency of the activity, considering the needs of other fields or organizations;
- f) the benefits to be gained by the implementation of the proposed standard(s); alternatively, the loss or disadvantage(s) if no standard is established within a reasonable time. Data such as product volume or value of trade shall be included and quantified.

If the standardization activity is or is likely to be the subject of regulations or to require the harmonization of existing regulations, this should be indicated.

C.4.4 Proposed initial programme of work (for proposals for new fields of technical activity only)

C.4.4.1 The proposed programme of work shall correspond to and clearly reflect the aims of the standardization activities and shall, therefore, show the relationship between the subjects proposed.

C.4.4.2 Each item on the programme of work shall be defined by both the subject and aspect(s) to be standardized (for products, for example, the items would be the types of products, characteristics, other requirements, data to be supplied, test methods, etc.).

C.4.4.3 Supplementary justification may be combined with particular items in the programme of work.

C.4.4.4 The proposed programme of work shall also suggest priorities and target dates for new work items (when a series of standards is proposed, priorities shall be suggested).

C.4.5 Indication(s) of the preferred type or types of deliverable(s) to be produced

In the case of proposals for new fields of technical activity, this may be provided under C.4.4.

~~C.4.5~~C.4.6 A listing of relevant existing documents at the international, regional and national levels

C.4.5.1 — Any known relevant documents (such as standards and regulations) shall be listed, regardless of their source and should be accompanied by an indication of their significance.

~~C.4.5.2~~ — ~~It would generally be helpful if the list of documents could be accompanied by an indication of their significance.~~

~~C.4.5.3~~ — ~~When the proposer considers that an existing well-established document may be acceptable as a standard (with or without amendments) this shall be indicated with appropriate justification and a copy attached to the proposal.~~

C.4.7 Relation to and impact ~~to~~on existing work

C.4.7.1 A statement shall be provided regarding any relation or impact the proposed work may have on existing work, especially existing ISO and IEC deliverables. The proposer should explain how the work differs from apparently similar work, or explain how duplication and conflict will be minimized.

Formatted: Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt

C.4.7.2 If seemingly similar or related work is already in the scope of other committees of the organization or in other organizations, the proposed scope shall distinguish between the proposed work and the other work.

C.4.7.3 The proposer shall indicate whether his or her proposal could be dealt with by widening the scope of an existing committee or by establishing a new committee.

C.4.8 Relevant country participation

Formatted: ANNEX-heading2

C.4.8.1 For proposals for new fields of technical activity, a listing of relevant countries should be provided where the subject of the proposal is important to their national commercial interests.

C.4.8.2 For proposals for new work item within existing committees, a listing of relevant countries should be provided which are not already P--members of the committee, but for whom the subject of the proposal is important to their national commercial interests.

Formatted: Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt

~~C.4.6~~C.4.9 Cooperation and liaison

C.4.9.1 A list of relevant external international organizations or internal parties (other than ISO and/or IEC committees) to be engaged as liaisons in the development of the deliverable(s) shall be provided.
~~bodies with which cooperation and liaison should exist, shall be listed.~~

C.4.9.2 In order to avoid conflict with, or duplication of efforts of, other bodies, it is important to indicate all points of possible conflict or overlap.

C.4.9.3 The result of any communication with other interested bodies shall also be included.

C.4.10 Affected stakeholders

Formatted: ANNEX-heading2

A simple and concise statement shall be provided identifying and describing relevant affected stakeholder categories (including small and medium sized enterprises) and how they will each benefit from or be impacted by the proposed deliverable(s).

Formatted: Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt

C.4.11 Base document (for proposals for new work items only)

Formatted: ANNEX-heading2

C.4.11.1 When the proposer considers that an existing well-established document may be acceptable as a standard (with or without amendments) this shall be indicated with appropriate justification and a copy attached to the proposal.

Formatted: Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt

C.4.11.2 All proposals for new work items shall include an attached existing document to serve as an initial basis for the ISO or IEC deliverable or a proposed outline or table of contents.

C.4.11.3 If an existing document is attached that is copyrighted or includes copyrighted content, the proposer shall ensure that appropriate permissions have been granted in writing for ISO or IEC to use that copyrighted content.

C.4.12 Leadership commitment

C.4.12.1 In the case of a proposal for a new field of technical activity, the proposer shall indicate whether his organization is prepared to undertake the secretariat work required.

C.4.12.2 In the case of a proposal for new work item, the proposer shall also nominate a project leader.

C.4.13 Purpose and justification

C.4.13.1 The purpose and justification of the standard to be prepared shall be made clear and the need for standardization of each aspect (such as characteristics) to be included in the standard shall be justified.

C.4.13.2 If a series of new work items is proposed the purpose and the justification of which is common, a common proposal may be drafted including all elements to be clarified and enumerating the titles and scopes of each individual item.

C.4.13.3 Please note that the items listed in the bullet points below represent a menu of suggestions or ideas for possible documentation to support the purpose and justification of proposals. Proposers should consider these suggestions, but they are not limited to them, nor are they required to comply strictly with them. What is most important is that proposers develop and provide purpose and justification information that is most relevant to their proposals and that makes a substantial business case for the market relevance and need of their proposals. Thorough, well-developed and robust purpose and justification documentation will lead to more informed consideration of proposals and ultimately their possible success in the ISO and IEC systems.

- A simple and concise statement describing the business, technological, societal or environmental issue that the proposal seeks to address, preferably linked to the Strategic Business Plan of the concerned ISO or IEC committee.
- Documentation on relevant global metrics that demonstrate the extent or magnitude of the economic, technological, societal or environmental issue, or the new market. This may include an estimate of the potential sales of the resulting standard(s) as an indicator of potential usage and global relevance.
- Technological benefit – a simple and concise statement describing the technological impact of the proposal to support coherence in systems and emerging technologies, convergence of merging technologies, interoperability, resolution of competing technologies, future innovation, etc.
- Economic benefit – a simple and concise statement describing the potential of the proposal to remove barriers to trade, improve international market access, support public procurement, improve business efficiency for a broad range of enterprises including small and medium sized ones, and/or result in a flexible, cost-effective means of complying with international and regional rules/conventions, etc. A simple cost/benefit analysis relating the cost of producing the deliverable(s) to the expected economic benefit to businesses worldwide may also be helpful.

Formatted: ANNEX-heading2

Formatted: Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt

Formatted: ANNEX-heading2

Formatted: Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt

- Societal benefit(s) – a simple and concise statement describing any societal benefits expected from the proposed deliverable(s).
- Environmental benefit(s) – a simple and concise statement describing any environmental or wider sustainability benefits expected from the proposed deliverable(s).
- A simple and concise statement clearly describing the intended use(s) of the proposed deliverable(s), for example, whether the deliverable is intended as requirements to support conformity assessment or only as guidance or recommended best practices; whether the deliverable is a management system standard; whether the deliverable is intended for use or reference in technical regulation; whether the deliverable is intended to be used to support legal cases in relation to international treaties and agreements.
- A simple and concise statement of metrics for the committee to track in order to assess the impact of the published standard over time to achieve the benefits to stakeholders documented under C.4.10 above.
- A statement assessing the prospect of the resulting deliverable(s) being compliant with, for the IEC, the IEC Global Relevance Policy: http://www.iec.ch/members_experts/refdocs/ac_cl/AC_200817e_AC.pdf and for ISO, with ISO's Global Relevance Policy **Error! Hyperlink reference not valid.** and the ISO/TMB recommendations (see NOTE 1 below) regarding sustainable development and sustainability, where relevant.

NOTE 1 For ISO, the ISO/TMB confirmed the following recommendations: 1) When a committee (in any sector) develops a standard dealing with sustainability/sustainable development the standard must remain within the context of the committee's scope of work; 2) The committee should also notify the ISO/TMB with the title and scope as early as possible; 3) The committee undertaking such work should clarify its intentions in the Introduction of the specific standard(s); 4) The most widely used definition of sustainable development is the one from the UN Brundtland committee on sustainable development: development that meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs.

Formatted: NOTE

- A statement assessing the proposal's compliance with the Principles for developing ISO and IEC Standards related to or supporting public policy initiatives (for ISO see Annex SO in the Consolidated ISO Supplement and for IEC and ISO see *Using and referencing ISO and IEC standards for technical regulations*: http://www.iso.org/iso/standards_for_technical_regulations.pdf) and the possible relation of the resulting deliverable(s) to public policy, including a statement regarding the potential for easier market access due to conformity with appropriate legislation.

Formatted: Font color: Auto

Formatted: Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt

C.4.7 — Secretariat duties

The proposer shall indicate whether his organization is prepared to undertake the secretariat work required for the new field of activity proposed.

C.5 — Elements to be clarified when proposing a new work item (new standard)

C.5.1 — Title

The title shall indicate the subject matter of the proposed new standard.

Example: "Electrotechnical products — Basic environmental testing procedures".

C.5.2 — Scope (and field of application)

The scope shall give a clear indication of the coverage of the proposed new work item and, if necessary for clarity, exclusions shall be stated.

Example:

This standard lists a series of environmental test procedures, and their severities, designed to assess the ability of electrotechnical products to perform under expected conditions of service.

Although primarily intended for such applications, this standard may be used in other fields where desired.

Other environmental tests, specific to the individual types of specimen, may be included in the relevant specifications.

C.5.3 — Purpose and justification

C.5.3.1 — ~~The purpose and justification of the standard to be prepared shall be made clear and the need for standardization of each aspect (such as characteristics) to be included in the standard shall be justified, as is required in C.4.3. The proposer shall include a statement to the effect that according to his knowledge there is no other work dealing with the subject proposed.~~

C.5.3.2 — ~~If a series of new work items is proposed the purpose and the justification of which is common, a common proposal may be drafted including all elements to be clarified and enumerating the titles and scopes of each individual item.~~

C.5.4 — Programme of work

~~Target date(s) shall be indicated and, when a series of standards is proposed, priorities shall be suggested.~~

C.5.5 — Relevant documents

~~See C.4.5.~~

C.5.6 — Cooperation and liaison

~~See C.4.6.~~

C.5.7 — Preparatory work

~~The proposer shall indicate whether he or his organization is prepared to undertake the preparatory work required for the new work item. The proposer shall make every effort to submit a complete working draft with the proposal, or at least submit an outline. The proposer shall also nominate a project leader.~~

C.6 — Matrix

C.6.1 — ~~To assist the proposer in ordering his thoughts in easily understandable terms, the matrix shown in C.9 may be helpful in establishing the purpose of the proposal and accordingly the aspects to be covered.~~

~~The proposer should identify on the vertical axis the main purpose(s) of the proposed new work. The aspects most relevant should then be identified opposite the appropriate purpose(s).~~

C.6.2 — ~~It is recommended that a copy of any completed matrix be attached to the proposal.~~

~~The matrix in C.9 should be considered only as a model, because each characteristic and each test method may require its own column. It may be useful in the assessment of the proposal for the new work.~~

C.6.3 — ~~For some subjects, the matrix may be used at a very early stage; for others, in parallel with the establishment of a committee programme of work and in any case, it may be modified as necessary. In other cases (especially for complex products), it may not be possible to answer the questions contained in the matrix until the work has reached some advanced stage. Even in these cases, it may be useful to construct an appropriate matrix as early as possible because it may reveal some gap or inconsistency which might otherwise remain unnoticed.~~

C.6.4 — ~~Examples for the use of the matrix are given in C.10 and C.11.~~

C.7 — Example of a proposal for a new field of technical activity

Proposer: Slobovian National Standards Institution (SNSI), member body of ISO for Slobovia³⁾

Title: "Machine tools"

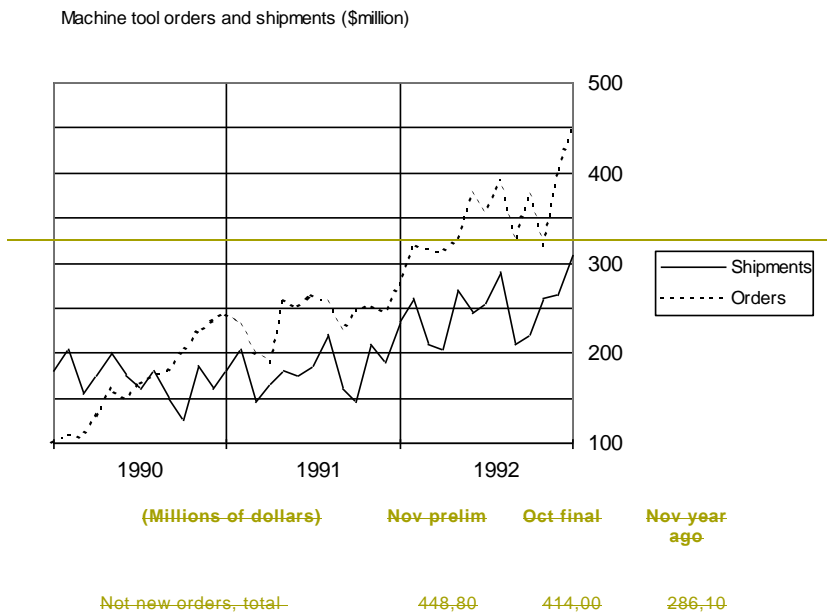
Scope:

³⁾ Taking the example of an imaginary country.

~~"Standardization of all machine tools for the working of metal, wood and plastics, operating by removal of material or by pressure. Excluded: standardization of electrical equipments used in machine tools (dealt with by IEC/TC 44)."~~

Purpose and justification:

- ~~The purpose of the proposed standardization is to promote the harmonization of national specifications and requirements concerning the main characteristics, interface, interchangeability, operating elements, operating symbols, safety devices, accuracy, testing, etc., relating both to the machine tools themselves and to related tools and fixtures.~~
- ~~Problems arise in international trade, not only in the machine tools themselves but in semi-finished parts, due to differences in the technical requirements that are valid in different countries, especially for safety requirements, methods of testing accuracy as well as compatibility of accessories.~~
- ~~The main interests expected to benefit from the proposed standardization are machine tool makers, machine tool users, toolmakers and specialized producers of machine tool parts and accessories. Also workers operating the machine tools will benefit from uniform operating elements and symbols.~~
- ~~International trade in machine tools is increasing rapidly, and industrialized countries export more and more machines⁴⁾. However, some industries face barriers to trade from time to time caused by differing requirements in regulations.~~
- ~~Recessions of the export volumes of some countries are partly caused by these barriers, to be removed or reduced by international standardization.~~
- ~~Feasibility of the activity is apparent from the above facts. However the later international standardization is made, the more difficult the harmonization of national specifications will be. No other international organization is dealing with this standardization, hence the work is urgent.~~
- ~~The proposed standardization is timely since design and technology of machine tools are stabilized; nevertheless, further development is rapid, producing new types, new control systems, etc. World-wide need of these products is greater than the present world capacity, as shown in the figure.~~



⁴⁾ ~~To illustrate this point, the proposer should attach tables, graphs, statistics or other supporting material.~~

—cutting—	347,85	334,05	222,65
—forming—	100,95	79,95	63,45
Shipments, total—	312,35	266,80	221,95
—cutting—	207,90	195,05	163,05
—forming—	104,45	71,75	58,90
Export orders—	37,40	27,45	21,10
—shipments—	38,95	28,25	32,30
Backlogs, cutting—	2873,8	2733,8	1747,4
—forming—	522,8	526,3	361,7
Cancellations, cutting	16,95	15,10	8,70
—forming—	4,60	4,1	2,05
Domestic orders, 3-month moving average			
—cutting—	287,9	267,2	177,0
—forming—	81,4	81,3	61,6

Source: National Machine Tool Builders' Association

Figure C.1 — Orders and shipments of machine tools

The benefits to be gained: specialized production and economical trade of standardized parts and units, international cooperation and trade, meeting safety requirements of importing parties, easy and safe handling and operation.⁵⁾

Proposed work programme:

List of standards required	Suggested time to completion of task years
1—Machine tools—Speeds and feeds	3
2—Machine tool test codes	3
3—Symbols for indication appearing on machine tools	4
4—Machine tools—Direction of operation of controls	5
5—Machine tools—Spindle noses and face plates—Sizes for interchangeability—Part 1: Type A	5
6—Machine tools—Spindle noses and face plates—Sizes for interchangeability—Part 2: Camlock type	5
7—Machine tools—Spindle noses and face plates—Sizes for interchangeability—Part 3: Bayonet type	5
8—Test conditions for surface grinding machines with vertical grinding wheel spindle and reciprocating table—Testing of accuracy	6
9—Test conditions for surface grinding machines with horizontal grinding wheel spindle and reciprocating table—Testing of accuracy	6
NOTE—It is proposed that this list should be reviewed and supplemented as needed in due course.	

Relevant documents:**Available national documents**

- ~~France NF E60-101, -102, -105, -111, -112, -115, -116, -117, -121, -122, -123, -124, -131, -132.~~
- ~~Japan JIS B 6330-74, 6331-74, 6332-77, 6333-77, 6334-77.~~
- ~~Czech Republic CSN 20 0301, 20 0312, 20 0315, 20 0316, 20 0318.~~
- ~~Poland PN-M-55330, 55331, 55332, 55340, 55350, 55351, 55356.~~

⁵⁾ Supporting data on world machine tool production and trade should be presented.

~~• USA NAS 913, 938, 953, 972, 979, 983, 985.~~

~~We consider that NAS 979, *Uniform cutting test — Metal cutting equipments specification* can be adopted as an ISO standard.~~

~~Cooperation and liaison:~~

~~Liaison should be established with IEC/TC 44 dealing with safety of machinery.~~

~~Secretariat duties:~~

~~The Slovenian National Standards Institution (SNSI) is prepared to undertake the secretariat duties of the proposed committee.~~

~~1996-11-05~~

~~D. Prath
Director
Slovenian National Standards Institution~~

C.8 — Example of a proposal for a new work item

Proposer: ~~Slobovian National Standards Institution (SNSI), member body of ISO for Slobovia⁶⁾~~

Title: ~~"Machine tools — Spindle noses and face plates — Sizes for interchangeability"~~

Scope:

~~The standard specifies the sizes for interchangeability of spindle noses and corresponding face plates of machine tools, including size and form tolerances, as well as position tolerances of the connecting surfaces.~~

Purpose and justification:

~~The purpose of the proposed standard is to specify a standardized choice of spindle noses and face plates as connecting parts of machine tools for tools and toolholders.~~

~~Slobovian importers and exporters of semi-finished castings and forgings have experienced considerable difficulties because of differing dimensions of spindle noses in different countries. It is expected that the proposed work will reduce these problems.~~

~~The main interests that might benefit from the proposed standard are: machine tool makers, machine tool users, tool makers, specialized producers of machine tooling and accessories.~~

~~International trade of machine tools and tooling increases rapidly. Standardized spindle noses and face plates will promote the utilization of standard tooling on various machines. Machining operations will be made more flexible.~~

~~The preparation of the proposed standard is feasible and timely, since based on experience of many years of practice, the use of 3 designs became generally accepted: the so-called "A-type", the "Camlock-type" and the "Bayonet-type". These 3 designs are stabilized and offer excellent performance. In order to establish a controlled variety of spindle noses, the standardization of these types is proposed. If necessary, the standard can be issued in 3 parts.~~

~~Suggested time to completion of task: 3 years.~~

~~The benefits to be gained: uniformity of spindle noses of machine tools delivered by various industries, enabling machine tool users to use the same standardized tool sets on several machine tools.~~

~~Possibility of producing standardized tooling by specialized tool making firms. International trade of machine tools and that of tooling. Interchangeability of tooling.~~

Relevant documents:

~~Available national documents:~~

~~— United Kingdom: BS 4442
— USA: ANSI B 5.9
— Germany: DIN 55021~~

Cooperation and liaison:

~~Liaisons should be established with ISO/TC 29, dealing with standardization of tooling.~~

Preparatory work:

~~The SNSI is willing to undertake the preparatory work.~~

~~1996-11-20
D. Prath
Director
Slobovian National Standards Institution~~

Formatted: English (U.S.)

⁶⁾ Taking the example of an imaginary country.

C.9 — Matrix for establishing the purpose of a proposal**Title:**

Purpose of the proposed new work	Aspects to be covered in the standard(s)							
	Terminology, symbols, signs, designation	Characteristics	Sampling	Testing and inspection	Complementary requirements (labelling, packaging, storage, etc.)	Documentation, e.g. to accompany the product	Other aspects and requirements	
Mutual understanding and communication								
Safety, EMC, health, protection of the environment								
Achievement of interchangeability or interface or compatibility provisions								
Performance, function, quality								
Economy of energy and raw material								
Variety control (rationalization)								
Consumer protection								
Other purposes								

C.10 Example of a matrix for establishing the purpose of a proposal for a new field of technical activity

Title: Machine tools

Purpose of the proposed new work	Aspects to be covered in the standard(s)							
	Terminology	Characteristics (see below)			Accuracy tests	Symbols appearing on machine tools	Modular units	Lubricants
		a)	b)	c)				
Mutual understanding and communication								
Safety, EMC, health, protection of environment	X			X		X		
Achievement of interchangeability or interface or compatibility provisions				X		X		
Performance, function, quality			X				X	
Economy of energy and raw material		X			X		X	X
Variety control (rationalization)								
Consumer protection			X					
Other purposes								

Characteristics:

a) overall internal height;

b) speeds and feeds:

— sizes of shanks;

— sizes of T slots and corresponding bolts;

— sizes of grinding wheels;

— sizes of spindle noses;

— sizes of lathe centres;

c) mounting of grinding wheels;

— direction of operation of controls.

C.11 Example of a matrix for establishing the purpose of a proposal for a new work item

Title: Machine tools: Spindle noses and face plates — Sizes for interchangeability

Purpose of the proposed new work	Aspects to be covered in the standard(s)							
	Terminology, symbols, signs, designation	Sizes and tolerances for interchangeability	Sampling	Testing and inspection	Complementary requirements (labelling, packaging, storage, etc.)	Documentation, e.g. to accompany the product	Other Aspects and requirements	
Mutual understanding and communication								
Safety, EMC, health, protection of environment								
Achievement of interchangeability or interface or compatibility provisions		X		X				
Performance, function, quality								
Economy of energy and raw material								
Variety control (rationalization)		X						
Consumer protection								
Other purposes								

Annex D
(normative)

Resources of secretariats and qualifications of secretaries

D.1 Terms and definitions

D.1.1

secretariat

national body to which has been assigned, by mutual agreement, the responsibility for providing technical and administrative services to a technical committee or subcommittee

D.1.2

secretary

individual appointed by the secretariat to manage the technical and administrative services provided

D.2 Resources of a secretariat

A national body to which a secretariat has been assigned shall recognize that, no matter what arrangements it makes in its country to provide the required services, it is the national body itself that is ultimately responsible for the proper functioning of the secretariat. National bodies undertaking secretariat functions shall become party to the ISO Service Agreement or IEC Basic Agreement, as appropriate.

The secretariat shall therefore have adequate administrative and financial means or backing to ensure:

- a) facilities for word-processing in English and/or French, for providing texts in machine-readable form, and for any necessary reproduction of documents;
- b) preparation of adequate technical illustrations;
- c) identification and use, with translation where necessary, of documents received in the official languages;
- d) updating and continuous supervision of the structure of the committee and its subsidiary bodies, if any;
- e) reception and prompt dispatch of correspondence and documents;
- f) adequate communication facilities by telephone, telefax and electronic mail;
- g) access to the Internet;
- h) arrangements and facilities for translation, interpretation and services during meetings, in collaboration with the host national body, as required;
- i) attendance of the secretary at any meetings requiring his/her presence, including technical committee and/or subcommittee meetings, editing committee meetings, working group meetings, and consultations with the chairman when necessary;
- j) access by the secretary to basic International Standards (see the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, 2011, Annex B) and to International Standards, national standards and/or related documents in the field under consideration;
- k) access by the secretary, when necessary, to experts capable of advising on technical issues in the field of the committee.

Whilst the Chief Executive Officer endeavours to send his representative to the first meeting of a technical committee, to meetings of technical committees with new secretariats, and to any technical committee or subcommittee meeting where such presence is desirable for solving problems, the office of the CEO cannot undertake to carry out the work for a secretariat, on a permanent or temporary basis.

D.3 Requirements of a secretary

The individual appointed as secretary shall

- a) have sufficient knowledge of English and/or French;
- b) be familiar with the *Statutes and rules of procedure*, as appropriate, and with the ISO/IEC Directives (see the respective Supplements to the ISO/IEC Directives);
- c) be in a position to advise the committee and any subsidiary bodies on any point of procedure or drafting, after consultation with the office of the CEO if necessary;
- d) be aware of any council board or technical management board decision regarding the activities of the technical committees in general and of the committee for which he is responsible in particular;
- e) be a good organizer and have training in and ability for technical and administrative work, in order to organize and conduct the work of the committee and to promote active participation on the part of committee members and subsidiary bodies, if any;
- f) be familiar with the documentation supplied by the offices of CEO, in particular the use of electronic tools and services-ISO e-Services Guide.

It is recommended that newly appointed secretaries of technical committees should make an early visit to the office of the CEO in Geneva in order to discuss procedures and working methods with the staff concerned.

Annex E (normative) General policy on the use of languages

E.1 Expressing and communicating ideas in an international environment

At the international level, it is common practice to use at least two languages. There are a number of reasons why it is advantageous to use two languages, for example:

- greater clarity and accuracy of meaning can be achieved by expressing a given concept in two languages which have different grammar and syntax;
- if consensus is reached on the basis of a text drafted in only one language, difficulties may arise when it comes to putting that text into another language. Some questions may have to be rediscussed, and this can cause delay if the text originally agreed upon has to be altered. Subsequent drafting into a second language of a text already approved in the first language often brings to light difficulties of expression that could have been avoided if both versions had been prepared at the same time and then amended together;
- to ensure that international meetings will be as productive as possible, it is important for the agreements reached to be utterly devoid of ambiguity, and there has to be no risk that these agreements can be called back into question because of misunderstandings of a linguistic nature;
- the use of two languages chosen from two linguistic groups widens the number of prospective delegates who might be appointed to attend the meetings;
- it becomes easier to express a concept properly in other languages if there are already two perfectly harmonized versions.

E.2 The use of languages in the technical work

The official languages are English, French and Russian.

The work of the technical committees and the correspondence may be in any one or more of these languages, whichever is or are appropriate.

For the purposes of the above, the national body for the Russian Federation provides all interpretation and translation into and from the Russian language.

E.3 International Standards

International Standards are published by the ISO and IEC in English and in French (and sometimes in multilingual editions also including Russian and other languages, especially in cases of terminology). These versions of a given International Standard are equivalent, and each is regarded as being an original-language version.

It is advantageous for the technical content of a standard to be expressed in both English and French from the outset of the drafting procedure, so that these two versions will be studied, amended and adopted at the same time and their linguistic equivalence will be ensured at all times. (See also the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, 2011, 4.5.)

This may be done

- by the secretariat or, under the latter's responsibility, with outside assistance, or
- by the editing committee of the responsible technical committee or subcommittee, or
- by national bodies whose national language is English or French and under an agreement concluded between those national bodies and the secretariat concerned.

When it is decided to publish a multilingual International Standard (a vocabulary, for example), the national body for the Russian Federation takes charge of the Russian portion of the text; similarly, when it is decided to publish an International Standard containing terms or material in languages other than the official languages, the national bodies whose national languages are involved are

responsible for selecting the terms or for drafting the portions of text which are to be in those languages.

E.4 Other publications developed by technical committees

Other publications may be issued in one official language only.

E.5 Documents for technical committee and subcommittee meetings

E.5.1 Drafts and documents referred to the agenda

The documents prepared and circulated prior to a meeting are the following.

a) Draft agendas

Draft agendas are prepared in both English and French whenever possible by the responsible secretariats and are reproduced and distributed.

b) Committee drafts referred to in the agenda

It is desirable that both the English and the French versions of committee drafts referred to in the agenda will be available for the meeting.

Enquiry drafts shall be available in English and French. The ISO Council or IEC Standardization Management Board guidelines shall be applied where one of the language versions is not available in due time.

Other documents (sundry proposals, comments, etc.) relating to agenda items may be prepared in only one language (English or French).

E.5.2 Documents prepared and circulated during a meeting

The documents prepared and circulated during a meeting are the following.

a) Resolutions adopted during the meeting

An ad hoc drafting committee, formed at the beginning of each meeting and comprising the secretary and, whenever possible, one or more delegates of English and/or French mother tongue, edits each of the proposed resolutions.

b) Brief minutes, if any, prepared after each session

If such minutes are prepared, they shall be drafted in English or French and preferably in both with, if necessary, the assistance of the ad hoc drafting committee.

E.5.3 Documents prepared and circulated after a meeting

After each technical committee or subcommittee meeting, the secretariat concerned shall draft a report of the meeting, which may be in only one language (English or French) and which includes, as annex, the full text of the resolutions adopted, preferably in both English and French.

E.6 Documents prepared in languages other than English or French

National bodies whose national language is neither English nor French may translate any documents circulated by secretariats into their own national language in order to facilitate the study of those documents by the experts of their country or to assist the delegates they have appointed to attend the meetings of the technical committees and subcommittees.

If one language is common to two or more national bodies, one of them may at any time take the initiative of translating technical documents into that language and of providing copies to other national bodies in the same linguistic group.

The terms of the above two paragraphs may be applied by the secretariats for their own needs.

E.7 Technical meetings

E.7.1 Purpose

The purpose of technical meetings is to achieve as full agreement as possible on the various agenda items and every effort shall be made to ensure that all delegates understand one another.

E.7.2 Interpretation of debates into English and French

Although the basic documents may be available in both English and French, it has to be determined according to the case whether interpretation of statements expressed in one language should be given in the other language

- by a volunteer delegate,
- by a staff member from the secretariat or host national body, or
- by an adequately qualified interpreter.

Care should also be taken that delegates who have neither English nor French as mother tongue can follow the meeting to a sufficient extent.

It is impractical to specify rules concerning the necessity of interpreting the debates at technical meetings. It is essential, of course that all delegates should be able to follow the discussions, but it may not be altogether essential to have a word-for-word interpretation of each statement made.

In view of the foregoing, and except in special cases where interpretation may not be necessary, the following practice is considered appropriate:

- a) for meetings where procedural decisions are expected to be taken, brief interpretation may be provided by a member of the secretariat or a volunteer delegate;
- b) at working group meetings, the members should, whenever possible, arrange between themselves for any necessary interpretation on the initiative and under the authority of the convenor of the working group.

To enable the secretariat responsible for a meeting to make any necessary arrangements for interpretation, the secretariat should be informed, at the same time as it is notified of attendance at the meeting, of the languages in which the delegates are able to express themselves and of any aid which delegates might be able to provide in the matter of interpretation.

In those cases where a meeting is conducted mainly in one language, the following practice should be adopted as far as is practicable in order to assist delegates having the other language:

- a) the decision taken on one subject should be announced in both languages before passing to the next subject;
- b) whenever a change to an existing text is approved in one language, time should be allowed for delegates to consider the effect of this change on the other language version;
- c) a summary of what has been said should be provided in the other language if a delegate so requests.

E.7.3 Interpretation into English and French of statements made in other languages

When at a meeting of a technical committee or a subcommittee a participant wishes, in view of exceptional circumstances, to speak in any language other than English or French, the chairman of the session shall be entitled to authorize this, for the session in question, provided that a means of interpretation has been secured.

In order to give all experts an equal opportunity to express their views at meetings of technical committees and subcommittees, a very flexible application of this provision is recommended.

Annex F (normative) Options for development of a project

F.1 Simplified diagram of options

Project stage	Normal procedure	Draft submitted with proposal	“Fast-track procedure” ¹⁾	Technical Specification ²⁾	Technical Report ³⁾	Publicly Available Specification ⁴⁾
Proposal stage (see 2.3)	Acceptance of proposal	Acceptance of proposal	Acceptance of proposal ¹⁾	Acceptance of proposal		Acceptance of proposal ⁷⁾
Preparatory stage (see 2.4)	Preparation of working draft	<i>Study by working group⁵⁾</i>		Preparation of draft		Approval of draft PAS
Committee stage (see 2.5)	Development and acceptance of committee draft	<i>Development and acceptance of committee draft⁵⁾</i>		Acceptance of draft	Acceptance of draft	
Enquiry stage (see 2.6)	Development and acceptance of enquiry draft	Development and acceptance of enquiry draft				
Approval stage (see 2.7)	<i>Approval of FDIS⁶⁾</i>	<i>Approval of FDIS⁶⁾</i>	<i>Approval of FDIS⁶⁾</i>			
Publication stage (see 2.8)	Publication of International Standard	Publication of International Standard	Publication of International Standard	Publication of Technical Specification	Publication of Technical Report	Publication of PAS

Stages in *italics*, enclosed by dotted circles may be omitted.

1) See F.2.

2) See 3.1.

3) See 3.3.

4) See 3.2.

5) According to the result of the vote on the new work item proposal, both the preparatory stage and the committee stage may be omitted.

6) May be omitted if the enquiry draft was approved without negative votes.

7) See ISO and IEC Supplements for details on proposals for PAS.

F.2 “Fast-track procedure”

F.2.1 Proposals to apply the fast-track procedure may be made as follows.

F.2.1.1 Any P-member or category A liaison organization of a concerned technical committee or subcommittee may propose that an **existing standard from any source** be submitted for vote as an enquiry draft. The proposer shall obtain the agreement of the originating organization before making a proposal. The criteria for proposing an existing standard for the fast-track procedure are a matter for each proposer to decide.

F.2.1.2 An international standardizing body recognized by the ISO or IEC council board may propose that a **standard developed by that body** be submitted for vote as a final draft International Standard.

F.2.1.3 An organization having entered into a formal technical agreement with ISO or IEC may propose, in agreement with the appropriate technical committee or subcommittee, that a **draft standard developed by that organization** be submitted for vote as an enquiry draft within that technical committee or subcommittee.

F.2.2 The proposal shall be received by the Chief Executive Officer, who shall take the following actions:

- a) settle the copyright and/or trademark situation with the organization having originated the proposed document, so that it can be freely copied and distributed to national bodies without restriction;
- b) for cases F.2.1.1 and F.2.1.3, assess in consultation with the relevant secretariats which technical committee/subcommittee is competent for the subject covered by the proposed document; where no technical committee exists competent to deal with the subject of the document in question, the Chief Executive Officer shall refer the proposal to the technical management board, which may request the Chief Executive Officer to submit the document to the enquiry stage and to establish an ad hoc group to deal with matters subsequently arising;
- c) ascertain that there is no evident contradiction with other International Standards;
- d) distribute the proposed document as an enquiry draft (F.2.1.1 and F.2.1.3) in accordance with 2.6.1, or as a final draft International Standard (case F.2.1.2) in accordance with 2.7.1, indicating (in cases F.2.1.1 and F.2.1.3) the technical committee/subcommittee to the domain of which the proposed document belongs.

F.2.3 The period for voting and the conditions for approval shall be as specified in 2.6 for an enquiry draft and 2.7 for a final draft International Standard. In the case where no technical committee is involved, the condition for approval of a final draft International Standard is that not more than one-quarter of the total number of votes cast are negative.

Within ISO, the voting period on a proposal submitted as a final draft International Standard shall be 5 months.

F.2.4 If, for an enquiry draft, the conditions of approval are met, the draft standard shall progress to the approval stage (2.7). If not, the proposal has failed and any further action shall be decided upon by the technical committee/subcommittee to which the document was attributed in accordance with F.2.2 b).

If, for a final draft International Standard, the conditions of approval are met, the document shall progress to the publication stage (2.8). If not, the proposal has failed and any further action shall be decided upon by the technical committee/subcommittee to which the FDIS was attributed in accordance with F.2.2 b), or by discussion between the originating organization and the office of the CEO if no technical committee was involved.

If the standard is published, its maintenance shall be handled by the technical committee/subcommittee to which the document was attributed in accordance with F.2.2 b), or, if no technical committee was involved, the approval procedure set out above shall be repeated if the originating organization decides that changes to the standard are required.

Annex G
(normative)

Maintenance agencies

G.1 A technical committee or subcommittee developing an International Standard that will require a maintenance agency shall inform the Chief Executive Officer at an early stage in order that an ISO/TMB or IEC Council Board decision may be taken in advance of the publication of the International Standard.

G.2 The ISO/TMB or IEC Council Board designates maintenance agencies in connection with International Standards, including appointment of their members, on the proposal of the technical committee concerned.

G.3 The secretariat of a maintenance agency should be attributed wherever possible to the secretariat of the technical committee or subcommittee that has prepared the International Standard.

G.4 The Chief Executive Officer shall be responsible for contacts with external organizations associated with the work of a maintenance agency.

G.5 The rules of procedure of maintenance agencies shall be subject to ISO/TMB or IEC Council Board approval and any requested delegation of authority in connection with the updating of the International Standard or the issuing of amendments shall be specifically authorized by the ISO/TMB or IEC Council Board.

G.6 Any charges for services provided by a maintenance agency shall be authorized by the council board.

Annex H
(normative)
Registration authorities

H.1 A technical committee or subcommittee developing an International Standard that will require a registration authority shall inform the Chief Executive Officer at an early stage, in order to permit any necessary negotiations and to allow the technical management board to take a decision in advance of the publication of the International Standard.

H.2 The technical management board designates registration authorities in connection with International Standards on the proposal of the technical committee concerned.

H.3 Registration authorities should be qualified and internationally acceptable bodies; if there is no such organization available, such tasks may be conferred upon the office of the CEO by decision of the technical management board.

H.4 Registration authorities should be required to indicate clearly in their operations that they have been designated by ISO or IEC (for example, by including appropriate wording in the letterhead of the designated body).

H.5 Registration functions undertaken by the registration authority under the provisions of the relevant International Standard shall require no financial contribution from ISO or IEC or their members. This would not preclude, however, the charging for services provided by the registration authority if duly authorized by the council board.

Annex I
(normative)
**Guideline for Implementation of the Common Patent Policy for
ITU-T/ITU-R/ISO/IEC**

(~~1 March 2007~~ 2 December 2010)

Part I — Common guidelines	3
1 — Purpose	3
2 — Explanation of terms	3
3 — Patent disclosure	4
4 — Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration Form	5
4.1 — The purpose of the Declaration Form	5
4.2 — Contact information	6
5 — Conduct of meetings	6
6 — Patent Information database	7
7 — Assignment or Transfer of Patent Rights	7
Part II — Organization-specific provisions	8
II.1 Specific provisions for ITU	8
II.2 Specific provisions for ISO and IEC	9
ANNEX 1: COMMON PATENT POLICY FOR ITU-T/ITU-R/ISO/IEC	11
ANNEX 2: PATENT STATEMENT AND LICENSING DECLARATION FORM FOR ITU-T or ITU-R RECOMMENDATION ISO or IEC DELIVERABLE	13
ANNEX 3: GENERAL PATENT STATEMENT AND LICENSING DECLARATION FORM FOR ITU-T or ITU-R RECOMMENDATION	16

Part I – Common guidelines

I.1 Purpose

ITU, in its Telecommunication Standardization Sector (ITU-T) and its Radiocommunication Sector (ITU-R), ISO and IEC have had patent policies for many years, the purpose being to provide in simple words practical guidance to the participants in their Technical Bodies in case patent rights matters arise.

Considering that the technical experts are normally not familiar with the complex issue of patent law, the Common Patent Policy for ITU-T/ITU-R/ISO/IEC (hereafter referred to as the “Patent Policy”) was drafted in its operative part as a checklist, covering the three different cases which may arise if a Recommendation | Deliverable requires licences for Patents to be practiced or implemented, fully or partly.

The Guidelines for Implementation of the Common Patent Policy for ITU-T/ITU-R/ISO/IEC (hereafter referred to as the “Guidelines”) are intended to clarify and facilitate implementation of the Patent Policy, a copy of which can be found in Annex 1 and also on the web site of each Organization.

The Patent Policy encourages the early disclosure and identification of Patents that may relate to Recommendations | Deliverables under development. In doing so, greater efficiency in standards development is possible and potential patent rights problems can be avoided.

The Organizations should not be involved in evaluating patent relevance or essentiality with regards to Recommendations | Deliverables, interfere with licensing negotiations, or engage in settling disputes on Patents; this should be left - as in the past - to the parties concerned.

Organization-specific provisions are contained in Part II of this document. However, it is understood that those Organization-specific provisions shall contradict neither the Patent Policy nor the Guidelines.

I.2 Explanation of terms

Contribution: Any document submitted for consideration by a Technical Body.

Free of charge: The words “Free of Charge” do not mean that the Patent Holder is waiving all of its rights with respect to the ~~essential patent~~ Patent. Rather, “Free of Charge” refers to the issue of monetary compensation; *i.e.*, that the Patent Holder will not seek any monetary compensation as part of the licensing arrangement (whether such compensation is called a royalty, a one-time licensing fee, etc.). However, while the Patent Holder in this situation is committing to not charging any monetary amount, the Patent Holder is still entitled to require that the implementer of the ~~above document~~ relevant Recommendation | Deliverable sign a license agreement that contains other reasonable terms and conditions such as those relating to governing law, field of use, ~~Reciprocity~~, warranties, etc.

Organizations: ITU, ISO and IEC.

Patents: ~~Patents refer to essential~~ Patent: As used herein, the word “Patent” means those claims contained in and identified by patents or similar rights, utility models and other similar statutory rights based on inventions, (including any applications for any of the foregoing these) solely to the extent that any such claims are essential to the implementation of a Recommendation | Deliverable. Essential patents are patents that would be required to implement a specific Recommendation | Deliverable.

Patent Holder: Person or entity that owns, controls and/or has the ability to license Patents.

Reciprocity: ~~As used herein,~~ The word “Reciprocity” means that the Patent Holder shall only be required to license any prospective licensee if such prospective licensee will commit to license its ~~essential~~ Patent(s) ~~or~~

~~essential patent claim(s)~~ for implementation of the same ~~above document~~[relevant Recommendation | Deliverable](#) free of charge or under reasonable terms and conditions.

Recommendations | Deliverables: ITU-T and ITU-R Recommendations are referred to as “Recommendations”, ISO deliverables and IEC deliverables are referred to as “Deliverables”. The various types of Recommendation(s) | Deliverable(s) are referred to as “Document types” in the Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration Form (hereafter referred to as “Declaration Form”) attached as Annex 2.

Technical Bodies: Study Groups, any subordinate groups and other groups of ITU-T and ITU-R and technical committees, subcommittees and working groups in ISO and IEC.

L.3 Patent disclosure

As mandated by the Patent Policy in its paragraph 1, any party participating⁷ in the work of the Organizations should, from the outset, draw their attention to any known Patent or to any known pending Patent application, either ~~their~~^{its} own or ~~that~~ of other organizations.

In this context, the words “from the outset” imply that such information should be disclosed as early as possible during the development of the Recommendation | Deliverable. This might not be possible when the first draft text appears since at this time, the text might be still too vague or subject to subsequent major modifications. Moreover, that information should be provided in good faith and on a best effort basis, but there is no requirement for patent searches.

In addition to the above, any party not participating in Technical Bodies may draw the attention of the Organizations to any known Patent, either their own and/or of any third-party.

When disclosing their own Patents, Patent Holders have to use the Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration Form (referred to as the “Declaration Form”) as stated in Section 4 of these Guidelines.

Any communication drawing the attention to any third-party Patent should be addressed to the concerned Organization(s) in writing. The potential Patent Holder will then be requested by the [Director/CEO of the relevant Organization\(s\)](#) to submit a Declaration Form, [if applicable](#).

The Patent Policy and these Guidelines also apply to any Patent disclosed or drawn to the attention of the Organizations subsequent to the approval of a Recommendation | Deliverable.

Whether the identification of the Patent took place before or after the approval of the Recommendation | Deliverable, if the Patent Holder is unwilling to license under paragraph 2.1 or 2.2 of the Patent Policy, the Organizations will promptly advise the Technical Bodies responsible for the affected Recommendation | Deliverable so that appropriate action can be taken. Such action will include, but may not be limited to, a review of the Recommendation | Deliverable or its draft in order to remove the potential conflict or to further examine and clarify the technical considerations causing the conflict.

L.4 Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration Form

L.4.1 The purpose of the Declaration Form

To provide clear information in the Patent Information databases of each Organization, Patent Holders have to use the Declaration Form, which is available on the web site of each Organization (the Declaration Form is included in Annex 2 for information purposes). They must be sent to the Organizations for the attention, for ITU, of the Directors of the TSB or the BR or, for ISO/^{or} IEC, of the CEOs. The purpose of the Declaration Form is to ensure a standardized submission to the respective Organizations of the declarations being made by Patent Holders ~~and, most importantly, to require in the case of ITU, and~~

⁷ [In the case of ISO and IEC, this includes any recipient of a draft standard at any stage in the standards development process.](#)

~~to strongly desire in the case of ISO and IEC, supporting information and an explanation if a Patent Holder declares his/her unwillingness to license under option 1 or 2 of the Declaration Form (i.e., declares option 3 of the Declaration Form).~~

The Declaration Form gives Patent Holders the means of making a licensing declaration relative to rights in Patents required for implementation of a specific Recommendation | Deliverable. Specifically, by submitting this Declaration Form the submitting party declares its willingness ~~to license (by selecting option 1 or 2 on the Form) /or its unwillingness to license (by selecting option 3 on the Form),~~ according to the Patent Policy, Patents held by it and whose licence would be required to practice or implement part(s) or all of a specific Recommendation | Deliverable.

~~The statement contained in the Declaration Form remains in force as long as it has not been replaced, e.g., in case of obvious errors.~~

~~If a Patent Holder has selected the licensing option 3 on the Declaration Form, then, for the referenced relevant ITU Recommendation, the ITU requires the Patent Holder to provide certain additional information permitting patent identification. In such a situation, for any relevant ISO or IEC Deliverable, the ISO and IEC strongly encourage (but do not require) the Patent Holder to provide certain additional information permitting patent identification.~~

Multiple Declaration Forms are appropriate if the Patent Holder ~~has identified~~ wishes to identify several Patents and classifies them in different options of the Declaration Form ~~and/or for the same Recommendation | Deliverable~~ or if the Patent Holder classifies different claims of a complex patent in different options of the Declaration Form.

~~Information contained in a Declaration Form may be corrected in case of obvious errors, such as a typographical mistake in a standard or patent reference number. The licensing declaration contained in the Declaration Form remains in force unless it is superseded by another Declaration Form containing more favourable licensing terms and conditions from a licensee's perspective reflecting (a) a change in commitment from option 3 to either option 1 or option 2, (b) a change in commitment from option 2 to option 1 or (c) un-checking one or more sub-options contained within option 1 or 2.~~

4.2 Contact information

In completing Declaration Forms, attention should be given to supplying contact information that will remain valid over time. Where possible, the "Name and Department" and e-mail address should be generic. Also it is preferable, where possible, that parties, particularly multinational organizations, indicate the same contact point on all Declaration Forms submitted.

With a view to maintaining up-to-date information in the Patent Information database of each Organization, it is requested that the Organizations be informed of any change or corrections to the Declaration Form submitted in the past, especially with regard to the contact person.

5 Conduct of meetings

Early disclosure of Patents contributes to the efficiency of the process by which Recommendations | Deliverables are established. Therefore, each Technical Body, in the course of the development of a proposed Recommendation | Deliverable, will request the disclosure of any known Patents essential to the proposed Recommendation | Deliverable.

Chairmen of Technical Bodies will, if appropriate, ask, at an appropriate time in each meeting, whether anyone has knowledge of patents, the use of which may be required to practice or implement the Recommendation | Deliverable being considered. The fact that the question was asked shall be recorded in the meeting report, along with any affirmative responses.

Formatted: Tab stops: 1 cm, Left

As long as the Organization concerned has received no indication of a Patent Holder selecting paragraph 2.3 of the Patent Policy, the Recommendation | Deliverable may be approved using the appropriate and respective rules of the Organization concerned. It is expected that discussions in Technical Bodies will include consideration of including patented material in a Recommendation | Deliverable, however the Technical Bodies may not take position regarding the essentiality, scope, validity or specific licensing terms of any claimed Patents.

I.6 Patent Information database

In order to facilitate both the standards-making process and the application of Recommendations | Deliverables, each Organization makes available to the public a Patent Information database composed of information that was communicated to the Organizations by the means of Declaration Forms. The Patent Information database may contain information on specific patents, or may contain no such information but rather a statement about compliance with the Patent Policy for a particular Recommendation | Deliverable.

The Patent Information databases are not certified to be either accurate or complete, but only reflect the information that has been communicated to the Organizations. As such, the Patent Information databases may be viewed as simply raising a flag to alert users that they may wish to contact the entities who have communicated Declaration Forms to the Organizations in order to determine if patent licenses must be obtained for use or implementation of a particular Recommendation | Deliverable.

I.7 Assignment or Transfer of Patent Rights

In the event a Patent Holder participating in the work of the Organizations assigns or transfers ownership or control of Patents for which the Patent Holder reasonably believes it has made a license undertaking to the ITU/ISO/IEC, the Patent Holder shall make reasonable efforts to notify such assignee or transferee of the existence of such license undertaking. In addition, if the Patent Holder specifically identified ~~the~~ patents to ITU/ISO/IEC, then the Patent Holder shall have the assignee or transferee agree to be bound by the same licensing commitment as the Patent Holder for the same patent. If the Patent Holder did not specifically identify the patents in question to ITU/ISO/IEC, then it shall use reasonable efforts (but without requiring a patent search) to have the assignee or transferee to agree to be so bound. By complying with the above, the Patent Holder has discharged in full all of its obligations and liability with regards to the licensing commitments after the transfer or assignment. This paragraph is not intended to place any duty on the Patent Holder to compel compliance with the licensing commitment by ~~the~~ assignee or transferee after the transfer occurs.

Part II – Organization-specific provisions

II.1 Specific provisions for ITU

ITU-1 General Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration Form

Anyone may submit a General Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration Form which is available on the web sites of ITU-T and ITU-R (the form in Annex 3 is included for information purposes). The purpose of this form is to give Patent Holders the voluntary option of making a general licensing declaration relative to material protected by Patents contained in any of their Contributions. Specifically, by submitting its form, the ~~submitting party~~ Patent Holder declares its willingness to license ~~all its~~ Patents owned by it in case part(s) or all of any proposals contained in its Contributions submitted to the Organization are included in Recommendation(s) and the included part(s) contain items that have been patented or for which patent applications have been filed and whose licence would be required to practice or implement Recommendation(s).

The General Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration Form is not a replacement for the "individual" (see clause 4 of Part I) Declaration Form, which is made per Recommendation, but is expected to improve responsiveness and early disclosure of the Patent Holder's compliance with the Patent Policy. Therefore, in addition to its existing General Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration in respect of its Contributions, the Patent Holder should, when appropriate (e.g. if it becomes aware that it has a Patent for a specific Recommendation), also submit an "individual" Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration Form:

- for the Patents contained in any of its Contributions submitted to the Organization which are included in a Recommendation, any such "individual" Patent Statement and Licensing Declarations may contain either the same licensing terms and conditions as in the General Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration Form, or more favourable licensing terms and conditions from a licensee's perspective as defined in the "individual" (see clause 4.1 of Part I) Declaration Form; and
- for the Patents that the Patent Holder did not contribute to the Organization which are included in a Recommendation, any such "individual" Patent Statement and Licensing Declarations may contain any of the three options available on the Form (see clause 4.1 of Part I), regardless of the commitment in its existing General Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration.

The General Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration remains in force ~~as long as~~ unless it has not been replaced. It can be overruled/superseded by the "individual" (per Recommendation) Declaration Form from the same Patent Holder for any particular Recommendation (expectation is that this will rarely occur). ~~another General Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration form containing more favourable licensing terms and conditions from a licensee's perspective reflecting (a) a change in commitment- from option 2 to option 1 or (b) un-checking one or more sub-options contained within option 1 or 2.~~

The ITU Patent Information database also contains a record of General Patent Statement and Licensing Declarations.

ITU-2 Notification

Text shall be added to the cover sheets of all new and revised ITU-T and ITU-R Recommendations, where appropriate, urging users to consult the ITU Patent Information database. The wording is:

"ITU draws attention to the possibility that the practice or implementation of this Recommendation may involve the use of a claimed Intellectual Property Right. ITU takes no position concerning the evidence, validity or applicability of claimed Intellectual Property Rights, whether asserted by ITU members or others outside of the Recommendation development process.

As of the date of approval of this Recommendation, ITU [had/had not] received notice of intellectual property, protected by patents, which may be required to implement this Recommendation. However,

implementers are cautioned that this may not represent the latest information and are therefore strongly urged to consult the ITU Patent Information database.”

II.2 Specific provisions for ISO and IEC

ISO/IEC-1 Consultations on draft Deliverables

All drafts submitted for comment shall include on the cover page the following text:

“Recipients of this draft are invited to submit, with their comments, notification of any relevant patent rights of which they are aware and to provide supporting documentation.”

ISO/IEC-2 Notification

A published document, for which no patent rights are identified during the preparation thereof, shall contain the following notice in the foreword:

“Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this document may be the subject of patent rights. ISO [and/or] IEC shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.”

A published document, for which patent rights have been identified during the preparation thereof, shall include the following notice in the introduction:

“The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) [and/or] International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) draws attention to the fact that it is claimed that compliance with this document may involve the use of a patent concerning (... subject matter ...) given in (... subclause ...).

ISO [and/or] IEC take[s] no position concerning the evidence, validity and scope of this patent right.

The holder of this patent right has assured the ISO [and/or] IEC that he/she is willing to negotiate licences under reasonable and non-discriminatory terms and conditions ([with or without monetary compensation](#)) with applicants throughout the world. In this respect, the statement of the holder of this patent right is registered with ISO [and/or] IEC. Information may be obtained from:

name of holder of patent right ...

address ...

Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this document may be the subject of patent rights other than those identified above. ISO [and/or] IEC shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.”

ISO (www.iso.org/patents) and IEC (<http://patents.iec.ch/>) maintain on-line data bases of patents relevant to their standards. Users are encouraged to consult the data bases for the most up to date information concerning patents.

ISO/IEC - 3 National Adoptions

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0 cm

Patent Declarations in ISO, IEC and ISO/IEC Deliverables apply only to the ISO and/or IEC documents indicated in the Declaration Forms. Declarations do not apply to documents that are altered (such as through national or regional adoption). However, implementations that conform to identical national and regional adoptions and the respective ISO and/or IEC Deliverables, may rely on Declarations submitted to ISO and/or IEC for such Deliverables.

APPENDIX 1

COMMON PATENT POLICY FOR ITU-T/ITU-R/ISO/IEC

The following is a "code of practice" regarding patents covering, in varying degrees, the subject matters of ITU-T Recommendations, ITU-R Recommendations, ISO deliverables and IEC deliverables (for the purpose of this document, ITU-T and ITU-R Recommendations are referred to as "Recommendations", ISO deliverables and IEC deliverables are referred to as "Deliverables"). The rules of the "code of practice" are simple and straightforward. Recommendations | Deliverables are drawn up by technical and not patent experts; thus, they may not necessarily be very familiar with the complex international legal situation of intellectual property rights such as patents, etc.

Recommendations | Deliverables are non-binding; their objective is to ensure compatibility of technologies and systems on a worldwide basis. To meet this objective, which is in the common interests of all those participating, it must be ensured that Recommendations | Deliverables, their applications, use, etc. are accessible to everybody.

It follows, therefore, that a patent embodied fully or partly in a Recommendation | Deliverable must be accessible to everybody without undue constraints. To meet this requirement in general is the sole objective of the code of practice. The detailed arrangements arising from patents (licensing, royalties, etc.) are left to the parties concerned, as these arrangements might differ from case to case.

This code of practice may be summarized as follows:

- 1 The ITU Telecommunication Standardization Bureau (TSB), the ITU Radiocommunication Bureau (BR) and the offices of the CEOs of ISO and IEC are not in a position to give authoritative or comprehensive information about evidence, validity or scope of patents or similar rights, but it is desirable that the fullest available information should be disclosed. Therefore, any party participating in the work of ITU, ISO or IEC should, from the outset, draw the attention of the Director of ITU-TSB, the Director of ITU-BR, or the offices of the CEOs of ISO or IEC, respectively, to any known patent or to any known pending patent application, either their own or of other organizations, although ITU, ISO or IEC are unable to verify the validity of any such information.
- 2 If a Recommendation | Deliverable is developed and such information as referred to in paragraph 1 has been disclosed, three different situations may arise:
 - 2.1 The patent holder is willing to negotiate licences free of charge with other parties on a non-discriminatory basis on reasonable terms and conditions. Such negotiations are left to the parties concerned and are performed outside ITU-T/ITU-R/ISO/IEC.
 - 2.2 The patent holder is willing to negotiate licences with other parties on a non-discriminatory basis on reasonable terms and conditions. Such negotiations are left to the parties concerned and are performed outside ITU-T/ITU-R/ISO/IEC.
 - 2.3 The patent holder is not willing to comply with the provisions of either paragraph 2.1 or paragraph 2.2; in such case, the Recommendation | Deliverable shall not include provisions depending on the patent.
- 3 Whatever case applies (2.1, 2.2 or 2.3), the patent holder has to provide a written statement to be filed at ITU-TSB, ITU-BR or the offices of the CEOs of ISO or IEC, respectively, using the appropriate "Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration" Form. This statement must not include additional provisions, conditions, or any other exclusion clauses in excess of what is provided for each case in the corresponding boxes of the form.

APPENDIX 2

PATENT STATEMENT AND LICENSING DECLARATION FORM FOR ITU-T/ or ITU-R Recommendation | ISO/ or IEC DELIVERABLE



Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration for ITU-T/ or ITU-R Recommendation | ISO/ or IEC Deliverable

This declaration does not represent an actual grant of a license

Please return to the relevant organization(s) as instructed below per document type:

Director
Telecommunication
Standardization Bureau
International
Telecommunication
Union
Place des Nations
CH-1211 Geneva 20,
Switzerland
Fax: +41 22 730 5853
Email: tsbdir@itu.int

Director
Radiocommunication Bureau
International
Telecommunication
Union
Place des Nations
CH-1211 Geneva 20,
Switzerland
Fax: +41 22 730 5785
Email: brmail@itu.int

Secretary-General
International Organization for
Standardization
1 chemin de la Voie-Creuse
CH-1211 Geneva 20
Switzerland
Fax: +41 22 733 3430
Email:
patent.statements@iso.org

General Secretary
International Electrotechnical
Commission
3 rue de Varembe
CH-1211 Geneva 20
Switzerland
Fax: +41 22 919 0300
Email:
inmail@iec.ch

Formatted Table

Patent Holder:

Legal Name _____

Contact for license application:

Name _____

&

Department _____

Address _____

Tel. _____

Fax _____

E-mail _____

URL (optional) _____

Document type:

☐

ITU-T Rec. (*)

☐

ITU-R Rec. (*)

☐

ISO Deliverable (*)

☐

IEC Deliverable (*)

(please return the form to the relevant Organization)

☐

Common text or twin text (ITU-T Rec. | ISO/IEC Deliverable (*)) (for common text or twin text, please return the form to each of the three Organizations: ITU-T, ISO, IEC)

☐

ISO/IEC Deliverable (*) (for ISO/IEC Deliverables, please return the form to both ISO and IEC)

(*)Number _____

(*)Title _____

Licensing declaration:

The Patent Holder believes that it holds granted and/or pending applications for ~~p~~Patents, the use of which would be required to implement the above document and hereby declares, in accordance with the Common Patent Policy for ITU-T/ITU-R/ISO/IEC, that (check one box only):

☐

1. The Patent Holder is prepared to grant a ~~f~~Free of ~~e~~Charge license to an unrestricted number of applicants on a worldwide, non-discriminatory basis and under other reasonable terms and conditions to make, use, and sell implementations of the above document.

Negotiations are left to the parties concerned and are performed outside the ITU-T, ITU-R, ISO or IEC.

Also mark here ___ if the Patent Holder's willingness to license is conditioned on ~~f~~Reciprocity for the above document.

Also mark here ___ if the Patent Holder reserves the right to license on reasonable terms and conditions (but not ~~f~~Free of ~~e~~Charge) to applicants who are only willing to license their ~~p~~Patent-claims, whose use would be required to implement the above document, on reasonable terms and conditions (but not ~~f~~Free of ~~e~~Charge).

☐

2. The Patent Holder is prepared to grant a license to an unrestricted number of applicants on a worldwide, non-discriminatory basis and on reasonable terms and conditions to make, use and sell implementations of the above document.

Negotiations are left to the parties concerned and are performed outside the ITU-T, ITU-R, ISO, or IEC.

Also mark here ___ if the Patent Holder's willingness to license is conditioned on ~~f~~Reciprocity for the above document.

☐

3. The Patent Holder is unwilling to grant licenses in accordance with provisions of either 1 or 2 above.

In this case, the following information must be provided to ITU, and is strongly desired by ISO and IEC, as part of this declaration:

- granted patent number or patent application number (if pending);
- an indication of which portions of the above document are affected;
- a description of the ~~p~~Patents ~~claims~~ covering the above document.

Free of ~~e~~Charge: The words "~~f~~Free of ~~e~~Charge" do not mean that the Patent Holder is waiving all of its rights with respect to the ~~essential-p~~Patent. Rather, "~~f~~Free of ~~e~~Charge" refers to the issue of monetary compensation; i.e., that the Patent Holder will not seek any monetary compensation as part of the licensing arrangement (whether such compensation is called a royalty, a one-time licensing fee, etc.). However, while the Patent Holder in this situation is committing to not charging any monetary amount, the Patent Holder is still entitled to require that the implementer of the same above document sign a license agreement that contains other reasonable terms and conditions such as those relating to governing law, field of use, ~~reciprocity~~, warranties, etc.

Reciprocity: ~~As used herein,~~ The word "~~f~~Reciprocity" means that the Patent Holder shall only be required to license any prospective licensee if such prospective licensee will commit to license its ~~essential-p~~Patent(s) ~~or essential patent claim(s)~~ for implementation of the same above document ~~f~~Free of ~~e~~Charge or under reasonable terms and conditions.

Patent: The word "Patent" means those claims contained in and identified by patents, utility models and other similar statutory rights based on inventions (including applications for any of these) solely to the extent that any such claims are essential to the implementation of the same above document. Essential patents are patents that would be required to implement a specific Recommendation | Deliverable.

Signature:

Patent Holder

Name of authorized person

Formatted: Font: 11 pt, Not Bold

Formatted: Font: 11 pt, Not Bold

Formatted: Font: 11 pt, Not Bold

Formatted: Centered

Formatted: English (U.S.)

Title of authorized	
person	
I.1.1.1.1.1	Signature
I.1.1.1.1.2	Place,
	Date

FORM: draft 3 Dec 2010

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, English (U.S.)

Formatted: English (U.S.)

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, English (U.S.)

Formatted: English (U.S.)

Patent Information (desired but not required for options 1 and 2; required in ITU for option 3 (NOTE))

No.	Status [granted/ pending]	Country	Granted Patent Number or Application Number (if pending)	Title
1				
2				
3				
4				
5				
6				
7				
8				
9				
10				

☐ 1.4.1.4.1.3 Check here if additional patent information is provided on additional pages.

NOTE: For option 3, the additional minimum information that shall also be provided is listed in the option 3 box above.

Signature (include on final page only):

Patent Holder
Name of authorized
person
Title of authorized
person
Signature
Place, Date

FORM: draft 3 Dec 2010

Formatted: Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt

Formatted Table

Formatted: Font: 26 pt, Not Bold

Formatted: Space Before: 0 pt, Line spacing: single

Formatted: Font: 26 pt

Formatted: None, Line spacing: single, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate

Formatted Table

Formatted: Centered

Formatted: English (U.S.)

APPENDIX 3
GENERAL PATENT STATEMENT AND LICENSING DECLARATION FORM
FOR
ITU-T or ITU-R RECOMMENDATION

ITU
International Telecommunication Union



General Patent Statement and Licensing Declaration

for ITU-T or ITU-R Recommendation

This declaration does not represent an actual grant of a license

Please return to the relevant bureau:

Director
Telecommunication Standardization Bureau
International Telecommunication Union
Place des Nations
CH-1211 Geneva 20,
Switzerland
Fax: +41 22 730 5853
Email: tsbdir@itu.int

Director
Radiocommunication Bureau
International Telecommunication Union
Place des Nations
CH-1211 Geneva 20,
Switzerland
Fax: +41 22 730 5785
Email: brmail@itu.int

Patent Holder:

Legal Name _____

Contact for license application:

Name _____ & _____

Department _____

Address _____

Tel. _____

Fax _____

E-mail _____

URL (optional) _____

Licensing declaration:

In case part(s) or all of any proposals contained in Contributions submitted by the Patent Holder above are included in ITU-T/ITU-R Recommendation(s) and the included part(s) contain items ~~that have been patented for which Patents or for which patent applications~~ have been filed and whose use would be required to implement ITU-T/ITU-R Recommendation(s), the above Patent Holder hereby declares, in accordance with the Common Patent Policy for ITU-T/ITU-R/ISO/IEC (check one box only):



1. The Patent Holder is prepared to grant a free of charge license to an unrestricted number of applicants on a worldwide, non-discriminatory basis and under other reasonable terms and conditions to make, use, and sell implementations of the relevant ITU-T/ITU-R Recommendation.

Negotiations are left to the parties concerned and are performed outside the ITU-T/ITU-R.

Also mark here ___ if the Patent Holder's willingness to license is conditioned on reciprocity for the above ITU-T/ITU-R Recommendation.

Also mark here ___ if the Patent Holder reserves the right to license on reasonable terms and conditions (but not free of charge) to applicants who are only willing to license their patent claims, whose use would be required to implement the above ITU-T/ITU-R Recommendation, on reasonable terms and conditions (but not free of charge).



2. The Patent Holder is prepared to grant a license to an unrestricted number of applicants on a worldwide, non-discriminatory basis and on reasonable terms and conditions to make, use and sell implementations of the relevant ITU-T/ITU-R Recommendation.

Negotiations are left to the parties concerned and are performed outside the ITU-T/ITU-R.

Also mark here ___ if the Patent Holder's willingness to license is conditioned on reciprocity for the above ITU-T/ITU-R Recommendation.

Free of eCharge: The words "~~f~~Free of ~~e~~Charge" do not mean that the Patent Holder is waiving all of its rights with respect to the ~~essential-p~~Patent. Rather, "~~f~~Free of ~~e~~Charge" refers to the issue of monetary compensation; i.e., that the Patent Holder will not seek any monetary compensation as part of the licensing arrangement (whether such compensation is called a royalty, a one-time licensing fee, etc.). However, while the Patent Holder in this situation is committing to not charging any monetary amount, the Patent Holder is still entitled to require that the implementer of the relevant ITU-T/ITU-R Recommendation sign a license agreement that contains other reasonable terms and conditions such as those relating to governing law, field of use, ~~r~~Reciprocity, warranties, etc.

Reciprocity: ~~As used herein, t~~The word "~~r~~Reciprocity" means that the Patent Holder shall only be required to license any prospective licensee if such prospective licensee will commit to license its ~~essential-p~~Patent(s) ~~or essential patent claim(s)~~ for implementation of the same relevant ITU-T/ITU-R Recommendation ~~f~~Free of ~~e~~Charge or under reasonable terms and conditions.

Patent: The word "Patent" means those claims contained in and identified by patents, utility models and other similar statutory rights based on inventions (including applications for any of these) solely to the extent that any such claims are essential to the implementation of the relevant Recommendation | Deliverable. Essential patents are patents that would be required to implement the relevant Recommendation | Deliverable.

Signature:

Patent Holder

Name of authorized person

Title of authorized person

Signature

Place, Date

FORM: draft 3 Dec 2010

Annex J (normative)

Formulating scopes of technical committees and subcommittees

J.1 Introduction

The scope of a technical committee or subcommittee is a statement precisely defining the limits of the work of that committee. As such it has a number of functions:

- it assists those with queries and proposals relating to a field of work to locate the appropriate committee;
- it prevents overlapping the work programmes of two or more ISO and/or IEC committees.
- it can also help guard against moving outside the field of activities authorized by the parent committee.

J.2 Formulation of scopes

Basic rules for the formulation of scopes of technical committees and subcommittees are given in 1.5.10.

The order of the elements of a scope shall be:

- basic scope;
- in the ISO, horizontal functions, where applicable;
- in the IEC, horizontal and/or group safety functions where applicable;
- exclusions (if any);
- notes (if any);

J.3 Basic scope

Scopes of technical committees shall not refer to the general aims of international standardization or repeat the principles that govern the work of all technical committees.

In exceptional cases, explanatory material may be included if considered important to the understanding of the scope of the committee. Such material shall be in the form of "Notes".

J.4 Exclusions

Should it be necessary to specify that certain topics are outside the scope of the technical committee, these shall be listed and be introduced by the words "Excluded ..."

Exclusions shall be clearly specified.

Where the exclusions are within the scope of one or more other existing ISO or IEC technical committees, these committees shall also be identified.

EXAMPLE 1 "Excluded: Those ... covered by ISO/TC ...".

EXAMPLE 2 "Excluded: Standardization for specific items in the field of ... (ISO/TC ...), ... (IEC/TC ...), etc.".

It is *not* necessary to mention self-evident exclusions.

EXAMPLE 3 "Excluded: Products covered by other ISO or IEC technical committees".

EXAMPLE 4 "Excluded: ... Specifications for electrical equipment and apparatus, which fall within the scope of IEC committees".

J.5 Scopes of committees related to products

Scopes of committees related to products shall clearly *indicate the field, application area or market sector* which they intend to cover, in order to easily ascertain whether a particular product is, or is not, within that field, application area or market sector.

EXAMPLE 1 “Standardization of ... and ... used in ...”.

EXAMPLE 2 “Standardization of materials, components and equipment for construction and operation of ... and ... as well as equipment used in the servicing and maintenance of ...”.

The limits of the scope can be defined by *indicating the purpose* of the products, or by *characterizing* the products.

The scope *should not enumerate the types* of product covered by the committee since to do so might suggest that other types can be, or are, standardized by other committees. However, if this is the intention, then it is preferable to list those items which are excluded from the scope.

The *enumeration of aspects* such as terminology, technical requirements, methods of sampling, test methods, designation, marking, packaging, dimensions, etc. suggests a restriction in the scope to those particular aspects, and that other aspects may be standardized by other committees. The aspects of the products to be standardized should therefore not be included in the scope unless it is intended that the scope is limited to those particular aspects.

If the scope makes no mention of any aspect, this means that the subject *in its entirety* is covered by the committee.

NOTE The coverage does not necessarily mean the need for preparing a standard. It only means that standards on any aspect, if needed, will be prepared by that committee and no other.

An example of unnecessary enumeration of aspects is as follows:

EXAMPLE 3 “Standardization of classification, terminology, sampling, physical, chemical or other test methods, specifications, etc.”.

Mention of priorities, whether referring to type of product or aspect, shall not appear in the scope since these will be indicated in the programme of work.

J.6 Scopes of committees not related to products

If the scope of a committee is intended to be limited to *certain aspects* which are unrelated, or only indirectly related to products, the scope shall only indicate the aspect to be covered (e.g. safety colours and signs, non-destructive testing, water quality).

The term *terminology* as a possible aspect of standardization should not be mentioned unless this aspect is the only task to be dealt with by the committee. If this is not the case, the mention of terminology is superfluous since this aspect is a logical part of any standardization activity.

Annex K (normative)

Project committees

K.1 Proposal stage

A new work item proposal not falling within the scope of an existing technical committee shall be presented using the appropriate form and fully justified (see 2.3.4) by one of the bodies authorized to make new work item proposals (see 2.3.2).

It shall be submitted to the secretariat of the technical management board which shall arrange for it to be submitted to all national bodies for voting.

Proposers are also encouraged to indicate the date of the first meeting of the project committee (see K.3).

If the proposal was not submitted by a national body, the submission to the national bodies shall include a call for offers to assume the secretariat of a project committee.

Votes shall be returned within three months.

Acceptance requires:

- approval by a simple majority of the national bodies voting;
- a commitment to participate actively by at least five national bodies that approved the new work item proposal and nominated technical experts.

K.2 Establishment of a project committee

The technical management board shall review the results of voting on the new work item proposal and if the approval criteria are met, shall establish a project committee (the reference number shall be the next available number in the technical committee/ project committee sequence).

The secretariat of the project committee shall be allocated to the national body that submitted the proposal, or the technical management board shall decide on the allocation amongst the offers received if the proposal did not originate from a national body.

National bodies that approved the new work item proposal and nominated (a) technical expert(s) shall be registered as P-members of the project committee. National bodies that approved the new work item proposal but did not make a commitment to participate actively shall be registered as O-members. National bodies that voted negatively, but nevertheless indicated that they would participate actively if the new work item was approved, shall be registered as P-members. National bodies voting negatively without indicating a wish to participate shall be registered as O-members.

The office of the CEO shall announce to the national bodies the establishment of the project committee and its membership.

National bodies will be invited to confirm/change their membership status by informing the office of the CEO.

Similarly, the office of the CEO will contact any potential liaison organizations identified in the new work item proposal or in national body comments thereon and will invite them to indicate whether they have an interest in the work and, if so, which category of liaison they would be interested in. Requests for liaison will be processed according to the existing procedures.

K.3 First meeting of a project committee

The procedure for calling a project committee meeting shall be carried out in accordance with Clause 4, with the exception that a six weeks' notice period may be used if the date of the first meeting was communicated at the time of submission of the proposal.

The chair of the project committee shall be the project leader nominated in the new work item proposal or shall be nominated by the secretariat if no project leader was nominated in the new work item proposal.

The first meeting shall confirm the scope of the new work item. In case revision is necessary (for purposes of clarification but not extension of the scope), the revised scope shall be submitted to the technical management board for approval. It shall also confirm the project plan and in ISO the development track and decide on any substructures needed to carry out the work.

If it is determined that the project needs to be subdivided to produce two or more publications, this is possible provided that the subdivisions of the work lie fully within the scope of the original new work item proposal. If not, a new work item will need to be prepared for consideration by the technical management board.

NOTE Project committees are exempted from the requirement to establish a strategic business plan.

K.4 Preparatory stage

The preparatory stage shall be carried out in accordance with 2.4.

K.5 Committee, enquiry, approval and publication stages

The committee, enquiry, approval and publication stages shall be carried out in accordance with 2.5 to 2.8.

K.6 Disbanding of a project committee

Once the standard(s) is/are published, the project committee shall be disbanded.

K.7 Maintenance of standard(s) prepared by a project committee

The national body which held the secretariat shall assume responsibility for the maintenance of the standard(s) according to the procedures given in 2.9 unless the project committee has been transformed into a technical committee (see 1.10) in which case the technical committee shall be given the responsibility for the maintenance of the standard.

ANNEXES APPLICABLE TO ISO ONLY

Formatted: Font: 17 pt

Formatted: Font: 17 pt, English (U.S.)

Formatted: Font: 17 pt

Annex SA (normative)

Basic reference works and information resources

SA.1 Introduction

The following listing identifies basic reference works that committee chairmen and secretariats should have available to them to facilitate the effective support of their respective roles. The listing is divided into that material which is considered to be an essential, and that which will be useful in specific circumstances. Much of this material is available for download from one or more of the information resources listed under SA.4. Some material may only be available in electronic format.

This listing should not be presumed as being exhaustive, given that materials may be modified or added.

For reference works relating to the drafting of standards, reference should be made to the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.

SA.2 Works considered to be essential

- [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1: Procedures for the technical work^{8\)}](#)
- [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2: Rules for the structure and drafting of International Standards](#)
- [ISO Supplement — Procedures specific to ISO^{1\)}](#)

~~SA.3 Other works~~

- ~~— ISO Memento~~
- ~~— Guidelines and policies for the protection of ISO's intellectual property (ISO/GEN 09)~~
- ~~— ISO Guide 69:1999 Harmonized Stage Code system (Edition 2) — Principles and guidelines for use~~
- ~~— Guidelines for the preparation and submission of texts~~
- ~~— Guidelines for the preparation and submission of graphics~~
- ~~— Model manuscript of a draft International Standard (known as "The Rice Model")~~
- ~~— Guidelines for TC/SC Chairmen and Secretariats for implementation of the Agreement on technical cooperation between ISO and CEN (Vienna Agreement)~~

⁸⁾ These documents will also be available as a single consolidated document.

~~SA.4~~SA.3 Information resources

ISO Online (www.iso.org)

ISO Online is the principal ISO site providing a wide range of information on ISO and its activities. It is strongly recommended that this site is visited and explored as a means of obtaining a good overview of ISO and international standardization. In addition to information on ISO, its members and committees, international standardization and its importance to global trade, and ISO's products, the site also provides access to the ISO/IEC Directives and related documents.

~~SA.5~~SA.4 Other

All draft and current strategic business plans may be viewed online at <http://www.iso.org/bp>.

All forms and standard letters are available for download from <http://www.iso.org/forms>.

**Annex SB
(normative)**

Document distribution

SB.1 Document distribution

Details showing document distribution are shown in the table.

SB.2 Electronic notifications of document delivery

The information included in electronic notifications of document availability shall comprise

- **Subject line:** committee reference
- **Content** (the precise format may vary):
 - 1) N-number
 - 2) Official ISO reference number (e.g. CD 1234 for a committee draft, NP 2345 for a new work item proposal)
 - 3) Title of the document
 - 4) Expected action
 - 5) Due date for expected action
 - 6) Type of document (information, ballot, comment, notice of meeting, etc.)
 - 7) Date and location, if it is a meeting document
 - 8) Note field, for special information related to a particular document
 - 9) Hyperlink to the document

NOTE For further information on the electronic exchange of documents and other uses of computing and communications to support standards development in ISO, reference may be made to the ISO eServices section of ISO Online.

<div> <div>PARTY(IES) CONCERNED</div> <div>DOCUMENTS</div> </div>	Proposal initiator	TC or SC secretariat	TC or SC P- members	TC or SC O- members	Category A & B and internal liaisons	ISO Central Secr.	WG convener	WG experts	National bodies	TC or SC chairman
Proposal stage										
New work item proposal	*	●				○				
Copies of proposal + ballot paper		* 1)	●	○	○	○				○
Completed ballot papers		●	*			○				
Result of voting	○	* 1)	○	○	○	■				○
Preparatory stage										
Working draft(s) (WD)		○				○	*	●		
Final working draft		●				■	*	○		
Committee stage										
Committee draft(s) (CD)		*	●	○	○	○				○
Comments/Vote		●	*	☆	☆					
Compilation of comments + proposal		*	●	○	○	○	○			○
Reaction to proposal		●	☆							
Final committee draft		* 1)				■	○			○
Enquiry stage										
Draft International Standard		○			○	*			●	
Completed ballot papers						●			*	
Result of voting + comments		● 1)				*				●
Report of voting		*				●	○		○	○
Text for final draft International Standard		* 1)				■	○			○
Approval stage										
final draft International Standard + ballot paper		○			○	*			●	
Completed ballot papers						●			*	
Result of voting		○				*			○	○
Final proof		●				*				
Proof corrections		*				●				
Publication stage										
International Standard		○				*			○	
Systematic review										
List of Standards for review		●				*				
Re-distribution of listing + ballot papers		*	●	○	○					○
Completed ballot papers		●	*							
Report of voting + proposal		*			○	■			○	○
<div> <div> <div>*</div> <div>Sender of document</div> </div> <div> <div>●</div> <div>Recipient for action</div> </div> <div> <div>○</div> <div>Recipient for information</div> </div> </div> <div> <div>1)</div> <div>In the case of an SC, a copy is also sent to the TC secretariat for information</div> </div> <div> <div>■</div> <div>Recipient for registration action</div> </div> <div> <div>☆</div> <div>Optional action</div> </div>										

Annex SC (normative)

Strategic business plans

SC.1 Objectives of a TC strategic business plan

- 1) To demonstrate in an objective manner the specific benefits which result from, or are expected from, the work of this ISO/TC.

NOTE 1 These benefits can vary significantly between different fields in which committees are involved: they can be economic (cost savings, reduced time to market, easier access to certain regional markets, lower sales prices), they can be social (improvement of safety for workers, measured in the reduction of accidents) or they can be the improvement of the environmental impact, for example.

- 2) To support prioritization and to improve the management of the technical work in a committee.

NOTE 2 This includes the definition of target dates and the planning of resources for the work of the technical committee (and its SCs) in relation to the development of new and the maintenance of existing documents.

- 3) To increase the transparency in relation to the market forces and the percentage of market share represented within a committee.

All draft and current strategic business plans may be viewed online at <http://www.iso.org/bp>.

SC.2 Development tools and additional guidance

To facilitate the preparation of strategic business plans, ISO Central Secretariat has developed a document template. This template and additional guidance may be downloaded from the ISOTC server.

SC.3 Procedure for the development of a strategic business plan

SC.3.1 The committee secretary, in cooperation with some committee members and/or the committee chairperson, shall prepare a draft SBP. The draft SBP may be submitted to a TC internal consultation. Alternatively, the TC internal consultation may be conducted in parallel with the public review (see SC.3.3).

SC.3.2 The [ISO](#) Technical Management Board shall review the draft SBP, taking into account the set of minimum requirements approved for SBPs (see Table SC.1). If a draft SBP does not meet the defined requirements, it shall be rejected and returned to the TC secretariat for improvement.

SC.3.3 The draft SBP is made available to the general public for review and comment on a publicly accessible server (<http://www.iso.org/bp>) by ISO Central Secretariat for a three-months period. In parallel to this public review a full scale committee internal review may be conducted (alternatively, the committee consultation may have been conducted prior to submitting the draft SBP for public comment). Member bodies are encouraged to inform the interested public in their countries of the availability of the SBPs for public review and, if appropriate, to set links to the SBPs on the ISO server. The comments received during this period shall be reviewed by the committee in the process of preparing a final version of the TC SBP.

SC.3.4 The final and approved SBP is made available publicly on an ISO server (<http://www.iso.org/bp>) for the duration of its validity.

Table SC.1 — Requirements for business plans of ISO technical committees

Item	Description of Requirements	Score
1	Descriptions of relevant dynamics in the business environment related to the work of the ISO committee, and quantitative indicators of trends in this business environment and the acceptance and implementation of the ISO committee's standards.	1 to 5
2	Descriptions of tangible benefits that the standardization programme is expected to achieve for the business environment.	1 to 5
3	Descriptions of identified objectives of the ISO committee and strategies to achieve those objectives. This should include descriptions of specific actions that will be taken or that will be proposed to the ISO committee to better respond to the needs and trends of the business environment.	1 to 5
4	Descriptions of factors that may negatively impact the ISO committee's ability to achieve its objectives and implement its strategies, including information on the representation of the major market forces in the committee (geographically as well as by type, e.g. manufacturer, government, etc.).	1 to 5
5	Objective information regarding the ISO committee and its work programme that is required: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> — title, and scope of the committee — names of the chairman and secretary; — time allocated to the ISO committee by the chair and secretary; — designation, title and current ISO stage for each project in the work programme; — priorities assigned to projects in the work programme (if the committee assigns priorities) with an explanation of the reasons/process for prioritization; — relationships of projects to European regional standardization (CEN); — target dates for each project, and explanations of any over-run target dates; and — time allocated to each project by working group convenors, project leaders/editors and for translation. 	No score Mandatory information

Annex SD (normative)

Matrix presentation of project stages

STAGE	SUB-STAGE						
	00	20	60	90			
	Registration	Start of main action	Completion of main action	Decision			
				92 Repeat an earlier phase	93 Repeat current phase	98 Abandon	99 Proceed
00 Preliminary stage	00.00 Proposal for new project received	00.20 Proposal for new project under review	00.60 Close of review			00.98 Proposal for new project abandoned	00.99 Approval to ballot proposal for new project
10 Proposal stage	10.00 Proposal for new project registered	10.20 New project ballot initiated	10.60 Close of voting	10.92 Proposal returned to submitter for further definition		10.98 New project rejected	10.99 Approval to New project approved
20 Preparatory stage	20.00 New project registered in TC/SC work programme	20.20 Working draft (WD) study initiated	20.60 Close of comment period			20.98 Project deleted	20.99 WD approved for registration as CD
30 Committee stage	30.00 Committee draft (CD) registered	30.20 CD study/ballot initiated	30.60 Close of voting/ comment period	30.92 CD referred back to Working Group		30.98 Project deleted	30.99 CD approved for registration as DIS
40 Enquiry stage	40.00 DIS registered	40.20 DIS ballot initiated: <i>5 months</i>	40.60 Close of voting	40.92 Full report circulated: DIS referred back to TC or SC	40.93 Full report circulated: decision for new DIS ballot	40.98 Project deleted	40.99 Full report circulated: DIS approved for registration as FDIS
50 Approval stage	50.00 FDIS registered for formal approval	50.20 FDIS ballot initiated: <i>2 months</i> . Proof sent to secretariat	50.60 Close of voting. Proof returned by secretariat	50.92 FDIS referred back to TC or SC		50.98 Project deleted	50.99 FDIS approved for publication
60 Publication stage	60.00 International Standard under publication		60.60 International Standard published				
90 Review stage		90.20 International Standard under periodical review	90.60 Close of review	90.92 International Standard to be revised	90.93 International Standard confirmed		90.99 Withdrawal of International Standard proposed by TC or SC
95 Withdrawal stage		95.20 Withdrawal ballot initiated	95.60 Close of voting	95.92 Decision not to withdraw International Standard			95.99 Withdrawal of International Standard

Annex SE
(normative)

Numbering of documents

SE.1 Working documents (including committee drafts)

SE.1.1 TC and SC documents

Each document (including committee drafts — see also SE.2) relating to the work of an ISO technical committee or subcommittee which is circulated to all or some of the member bodies shall bear, at the top right-hand corner of recto pages and at the top left-hand corner of verso pages, a reference number made up according to the rules set out below. The first page of the document shall also bear, immediately under the reference number, the date, written in accordance with ISO 8601 (*Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*), on which the document was compiled.

Once a reference number is used for a working document, it shall not be used again for a document with differing wording and/or different contents. The same number may be used for a proposal and a voting form (optional). If a document replaces an earlier one, the first page of the new document shall bear, immediately under the reference number, the reference number(s) of the document(s) it replaces.

The reference number is made up of the following two parts separated by the letter N:

- 1) the number of the technical committee (TC) and, when applicable, the number of the subcommittee (SC) to which the working document belongs;
- 2) an overall serial number.

Thus, for a working document pertaining to a technical committee the reference number is made up as follows:

ISO/TC a Nn

For a working document pertaining to a subcommittee, it is made up as follows:

ISO/TC a/SC b Nn

where **a** stands for the number of the technical committee, **b** for the number of the subcommittee, and **n** for the overall serial number.

Reference within the number itself to the party originating the document (secretariat, member body, etc.) is not required; it is, however, recommended that the originator of the document be indicated underneath the title of the document where this is not otherwise apparent.

The overall serial number is assigned by the secretariat of a technical committee for all the working documents bearing the reference of this technical committee and by the secretariat of a subcommittee for all the documents bearing the reference of this subcommittee.

On the first page of a working document, it is recommended to make the overall serial number stand out, giving the figures a height of 6 mm to 10 mm.

EXAMPLE 1

ISO/TC 108 N **14** or ISO/TC 108 N **14**

ISO/TC 68/SC 3 N **25** or ISO/TC 68/SC 3 N **25**

The language of working documents may be indicated by adding the letter E, F or R, for English, French or Russian respectively.

EXAMPLE 2

ISO/TC 17 N **168 E** or ISO/TC 17 N **168 E**

ISO/TC 3/SC 2 N **28 F** or ISO/TC 3/SC 2 N **28 F**

ISO/TC 156/SC 3 N **5 R** or ISO/TC 156/SC 3 N **5 R**

Reference numbers of working documents, when they are quoted and repeated frequently, may be abbreviated by deleting the letters ISO, TC and SC.

EXAMPLE 3

ISO/TC 52 N 46 becomes 52 N 46

ISO/TC 22/SC 7 N 34 becomes 22/7 N 34

When enumerating documents which concern the same technical committee or subcommittee, it is not necessary to repeat the number of this committee.

EXAMPLE 4

documents 53 N 17, 18, 21

documents 86/2 N 51, 52, 60

SE.1.2 Working group documents

While the basic principles of the numbering system described in SE.1.1 may be useful for good order in the work of working groups, convenors of working groups are asked to bear in mind the need for speed and flexibility in their work. Any application of these rules which leads to delay is undesirable (e.g. it should not be necessary for the convenor to attribute a number to a document circulated by a working group member directly to the other working group members). However, see also SE.2.

SE.2 Working drafts (WD), committee drafts (CD), draft International Standards (DIS), final draft International Standards (FDIS) and International Standards

When a new project is registered by ISO Central Secretariat (see 2.3.5), the latter will allocate an ISO number to the project. The number allocated will remain the same for the ensuing WD,

CD, DIS and FDIS and for the published International Standard. The number allocated is purely a registration and reference number and has no meaning whatsoever in the sense of classification or chronological order. The number allocated to a withdrawn project or International Standard will not be used again.

If the project represents a revision or amendment of an existing International Standard, the registered project will be allocated the same number as the existing International Standard (with, in the case of an amendment, a suffix indicating the nature of the document).

If, however, the scope is substantially changed, the project shall be given a different number.

Successive WDs or CDs on the same subject shall be marked “first working draft”, “second working draft”, etc., or “first committee draft”, “second committee draft”, etc., as well as with the working document number in accordance with SE.1.

Successive DIS on the same subject will carry the same number but will be distinguished by a numerical suffix (.2, .3, etc.).

Annex SF (normative)

Hosting meetings

SF.1 Who may host an ISO meeting?

Meetings may be hosted by:

- any ISO member (member body, correspondent member, subscriber member);
- any liaison member of the committee concerned.

It is not necessary for a host to be a direct participant in the work of the committee concerned, although that will typically be the case.

A potential host shall first ascertain that there are no restrictions imposed by its country to the entry of representatives of any P-member of the technical committee or subcommittee for the purpose of attending the meeting. In some cases it may be necessary for special permission to be obtained for attendance — wherever possible the host should assist in determining if this is the case, but it is the joint responsibility of the secretariat or group leader, and the participant to determine any restrictions.

Given that some hosts may not have sufficient meeting facilities and/or other resources of their own, the main host — say an ISO member — may accept an invitation from another organization to assist by, for instance, providing a meeting location or organizing a welcoming event.

Irrespective of the actual host of a meeting, responsibility for the meeting concerned rests with the secretary (in the case of a technical committee or subcommittee, or similar groups) or group leader (in the case of working groups, ad-hoc groups, etc.). Thus, potential hosts should liaise directly with these individuals.

SF.2 Sponsorship of meetings

Large ISO meetings can be expensive and/or complicated to stage and support, and the resource requirements may exceed those that an ISO member can itself provide. It is therefore acceptable for a meeting to have one or more sponsors contributing to its organization and cost. Nevertheless, whilst it is acceptable for sponsors to be identified, and for their support to be recognized in the meeting, an ISO meeting shall not be used as an opportunity for the promotion for commercial or other reasons of the products or services of any sponsor (see also “Fees for delegates at ISO meetings”).

SF.3 Proposing or withdrawing support as a meeting host

The *ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1*, request that the following advance notice be given:

Meeting of ...	Advance notice of meeting date	Advance notice of meeting location
Technical committee or subcommittee	2 years	4 months
Working group	—	6 weeks

In general, the more notice the better in order that participants may make appropriate travel and business arrangements, and also obtain briefing, where appropriate.

If a host finds that they need to withdraw an offer, these notice periods should also be respected.

SF.4 Meeting locations

In planning meetings, account should be taken of the possible advantage of grouping meetings of technical committees and subcommittees dealing with related subjects, in order to improve communication and to limit the burden of attendance at meetings by delegates who participate in several technical committees or subcommittees.

SF.5 Facilities to provide at meetings

Any member body offering to host an ISO technical committee or subcommittee meeting undertakes to provide appropriate meeting facilities, including any provisions for interpretation (see SF.6), for the TC/SC, taking into account the normal attendance at such meetings and any requirements foreseen by the committee secretariat for facilities for parallel meetings (for example, of working groups, ad hoc groups or the drafting committee). The working facilities required during a meeting (i.e. additional to rooms) will vary from group to group. For TCs and SCs they will normally include word processing, printing, and photocopying facilities. Administrative support may also be needed. The host may be requested, but shall not be obliged, to provide separate facilities serving as the “chairman's” or “secretariat” room.

The exact requirements should be determined by the committee secretariat or group leader. Some committee secretariats develop and maintain a standing document to advise member bodies of the facilities that will be required of any potential host of a meeting of the committee, which ensures clear understanding of what will be required. The host of a working group is also expected to provide all basic working facilities.

SF.6 Interpretation facilities at meetings

The chairman and secretariat are responsible for dealing with the question of language at a meeting in a manner acceptable to the participants, following the general rules of ISO, as appropriate. The official languages at meetings are English, French and Russian, and meetings are conducted in any one or more of these. The typical language combinations are English and French, or English only. In the latter case, French may only be omitted with the explicit agreement of the francophone member(s). Thus, there may be an obligation on the host to provide interpretation between English and French. This needs to be determined in advance. Potential hosts may need to seek assistance from ISO Central Secretariat or from other P-members. The national body for the Russian Federation provides all interpretation and translation into or from the Russian language.

So far as the capabilities of translators (when required) are concerned, the guidance is:

- for meetings where final decisions on draft standards are expected to be taken, the services of an adequately qualified interpreter are generally required;
- meetings where “intermediary” or procedural decisions are expected to be taken, brief interpretation may be provided by a member of the secretariat or a volunteer delegate;
- at working group meetings, the members should, whenever possible, arrange between themselves for any necessary interpretation on the initiative and under the authority of the convenor of the working group.

SF.7 Welcoming activities and social events

ISO is widely recognized and respected. It is therefore not unusual for formal ceremonies to be associated with, for example, the opening of a technical committee meeting. Such events are acceptable, but their incorporation within the meeting period is entirely at the option of the host, and typically subject to the approval of the secretary and chairman of the group/s concerned.

A host may also offer social events of one kind or another, perhaps with the aid of co-sponsors. As for welcoming events, social events are entirely optional (see also SF.8).

It is recognized that the inclusion of welcoming and social events significantly increases the time and cost, etc. of organizing a meeting. It may also increase the cost of participation. Given the pressures on the resources of all participants there is merit in the simplification of meetings. Above all, meetings must not become “competitive” events so far as hosts are concerned, in the sense that no host shall feel obliged, in any respect, to equal or exceed the welcoming and/or social facilities offered at any previous meeting.

SF.8 Fees for delegates at ISO meetings

Accredited delegates shall not be obliged to pay a fee as a condition of their participation in ISO meetings. However, in very exceptional cases (e.g. large and complex meetings), some charging mechanism may be necessary, but such mechanisms shall be approved on a case-by-case basis by the Secretary-General of ISO.

There is no obligation on a host to provide social functions during ISO meetings but if a committee requests a host to organize social functions, the host shall have the right to require that the costs of holding such functions be borne by the delegates participating therein.

SF.9 Media participation policy~~Press attendance at ISO meetings~~

~~Interest by the press or other media in ISO work is to be welcomed and the ISO Central Secretariat and many ISO member bodies have public relations and promotion services able to provide information to the press concerning ISO, ISO standards, and work in progress.~~

~~In recent years, there has been a growing interest on the part of some of the press to be present during meetings of particular ISO committees. Whilst this interest is, again, welcome, the presence of the press during an ISO meeting may inhibit the free and open discussion of issues. For this reason, members of the press shall not be permitted to be present during working sessions of ISO meetings. However participation by members of the press may be permitted during opening and closing ceremonies of ISO plenary meetings.~~

~~When members of the press express interest in a particular ISO meeting, therefore, appropriate arrangements should be made to hold press conferences and briefings outside the meeting sessions.~~

SF.9.1 General

This clause describes a policy for engaging with the media to raise the effectiveness of communication activities of ISO. It is vital to ensure transparency and openness by proactively and consistently delivering accurate information to the public, and to support the use of proper channels to deliver information to the public as effectively and efficiently as possible.

This policy describes how to raise awareness about ISO activities and ensure transparency. It is important that all involved in ISO activities provide accurate and appropriate information in a spirit of good will and responsibility. The media contributes to the shaping of attitudes and behaviours of the general public. Building good media relations is important for building awareness through accurate information and preventing isolated and unrepresentative views and opinions from misleading the public.

Formatted: a3

Engagement with the media should be sought through multiple vehicles at multiple organizational levels.

All engagement with the media relating to ISO activities will be consistent with the following:

- Interest by the press or other media in ISO work is to be welcomed and the ISO Central Secretariat and many ISO member bodies have public relations and promotion services able to provide information to the press concerning ISO, ISO standards, and work in progress.
- In recent years, there has been a growing interest on the part of some of the press to be present during meetings of particular ISO committees. Whilst this interest is welcome, the presence of the press during an ISO meeting may inhibit the free and open discussion of issues. For this reason, members of the press shall not be permitted to be present during working sessions of ISO meetings. However participation by members of the press may be permitted during opening and closing ceremonies of ISO plenary meetings.

Formatted: List Paragraph, Bulleted +
Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0.63 cm +
Indent at: 1.27 cm

Formatted: List Paragraph, Bulleted +
Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0.63 cm +
Indent at: 1.27 cm

SF.9.2 ISO Central Secretariat roles

Formatted: a3

Within ISO, the ISO Central Secretariat prepares and releases any and all official press releases. The ISO Central Secretariat reserves the right of final decision on any ISO press release.

SF.9.3 ISO committee and working group leadership roles

Formatted: a3

Leaders shall only express the consensus reached by the delegates/experts at press conferences held in conjunction with the ISO committee meetings. Between meetings, the secretariat will endeavour to provide prompt written responses to media requests.

SF.9.4 Member body and mirror committee roles

Formatted: a3

At a local or national level, mirror committees are the proper channel for media inquiries. Mirror committees are encouraged to arrange meetings with local media. This will improve local participation and awareness. At the national level, the relevant member body's media policy should apply.

SF.9.5 Delegate, expert and observer roles

Formatted: a3

These parties shall not comment to the media on the consensus achieved in the ISO committee, nor shall they comment on the contributions and comments made by other delegates and experts in the working sessions of the ISO committee. This could have a detrimental effect on the productive dialogue and trust necessary among delegates and experts for effective ISO standards development.

SF.9.6 Meetings and media participation

Formatted: a3

Media representatives present at the site of a meeting must register with the ISO committee secretariat and the meeting host (name, organization, and contact number).

Media representatives will be given a media badge to wear or keep handy when present at the meeting site.

Registered media representatives with badges are allowed to attend the following events:

- Opening and closing ceremonies;
- Press conferences;
- Social events if invited by the host organization.

Formatted: List Paragraph, Bulleted +
Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0.63 cm +
Indent at: 1.27 cm

People from the media are not allowed to attend:

- Technical committee or subcommittee plenary meetings;
- Working group meetings;
- Chair's Advisory Group (CAG) meetings.

Formatted: List Paragraph, Bulleted +
Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0.63 cm +
Indent at: 1.27 cm

Press conferences may be scheduled for appropriate times (pre- and/or post-plenary) in a designated location by the ISO committee leadership in consultation with the public relations service of the host ISO member body. At the press conferences, the ISO committee leaders and ISO Central Secretariat representatives will make statements to the press. Delegates or experts may be invited to speak by the ISO committee leaders. Otherwise, delegates, experts and observers may attend, but are not permitted to speak at the press conferences.

SF.10 Tape recording at ISO meetings

The tape recording (or similar recording) of ISO meetings by the committee secretary is acceptable provided that at the outset of the meeting all participants are made aware that the meeting will be recorded and there are no objections. Individual participants shall have the right to require that the means of recording are switched off during a particular intervention if he or she so desires.

Such recordings are intended to aid the meeting secretary in preparing the minutes/report of the meeting. They may also be used to resolve disputes concerning what occurred at a meeting, which, in some instances, may require the preparation of transcripts of the recording.

The recordings and any transcripts are the property of the meeting secretary, who is expected to respect the confidentiality of ISO meetings. The recordings and transcripts shall accordingly not be divulged to third parties and should preferably be destroyed once the minutes have been approved.

Annex SG (normative)

Second (and subsequent) language texts for ISO standards

SG.1 Introduction

Annex E of the *ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1*, specifies the general policy on the use of languages as applied in ISO. This annex describes additional requirements concerning obtaining second and subsequent language texts. (English, French and Russian are the official ISO languages.)

SG.2 English and French

SG.2.1 Responsibilities

It is the responsibility of the ISO committee secretariat to obtain (but not necessarily themselves prepare) texts in English and French for all ISO-only and ISO-lead (Vienna Agreement) projects, unless one of these language versions is not to be published (see SG.5). Translation of documents into English or French is typically (but not exclusively) carried out by the translation department of the member body of the UK (BSI) for English or France (AFNOR) for French, or by agents nominated to act on their behalf. Other options are possible (see *ISO/IEC Directives — Part 1*, Annex E).

SG.2.2 Equivalence of texts

The secretariat of a technical committee or subcommittee is responsible for ensuring the equivalence of the English and French texts during the development of an ISO deliverable, if necessary with the assistance of experts in the language(s) concerned. A recommended way of ensuring equivalence of texts is to establish a multilingual editing committee.

SG.2.3 Timing of preparation of texts

The ISO/IEC Directives note that the concomitant preparation of language versions is with advantage started as early as possible in the development cycle. It is preferable, but not required, that Committee Drafts are available in all envisaged language versions. Apart from aiding comprehension during development, this also serves to help avoid preparation-related delays at later stages.

Where a second language version is required, TC and SC secretariats shall provide the member body responsible for the second language with a copy of the first language version no later than when it submits the text to ISO Central Secretariat for processing as a DIS, such action being notified in writing.

SG.2.4 Delays in receiving language versions

In the case where a second language version of an Enquiry Draft (DIS) is not available at the time the first language version is sent to ISO Central Secretariat, if the second language version is not available within 60 days of the submission of the original text, ISO Central Secretariat is authorized to proceed with DIS voting and subsequent publication of the approved International Standard in one language, the second language version being published when it becomes available.

If two or more language versions were circulated at the DIS Stage, then they should also normally be circulated simultaneously at the FDIS Stage, for final voting.

SG.2.5 Updating language versions after ballot

In the case of preparation of a second or subsequent DIS, or the FDIS text, in order to facilitate the preparation of the second language text (where required), TC and SC secretariats should preferably provide the member body responsible for the second language version with a marked-up copy of the revised first-language DIS showing the changes to be made.

SG.3 Russian

It is the responsibility of the Russian member body to determine those cases for which they consider a Russian version to be appropriate, and to provide all translation into or from the Russian language. ISO does not itself typically publish Russian-language versions of International Standards, except in those cases where Russian is one of the languages in a multilingual document, such as a vocabulary. In the case of the revision of a text with a corresponding Russian version, the committee secretariat shall liaise with the Russian member body to determine what is required.

SG.4 Other languages

In the case of some multilingual documents, such as vocabularies or lists of equivalent terms, languages other than the official languages of ISO may be included. In such cases it is the responsibility of the committee secretariat to ensure that these language versions have been prepared and validated by those having an appropriate level of skill in the language(s) concerned.

In those cases where an ISO project is a joint project with CEN under the *Agreement on technical cooperation between ISO and CEN (Vienna Agreement)*, the preparation of a German version is a requirement. For more guidance reference should be made to the separate [Guidelines for TC/SC Chairmen and Secretariats on the implementation of the Vienna Agreement](#). ~~*Guidelines for TC/SC Chairmen and Secretariats for implementation of the Agreement on technical cooperation between ISO and CEN (Vienna Agreement)*~~.

SG.5 Single-language versions

It may exceptionally be proposed that an international document need only be developed in a single language, perhaps where there is only a limited interest in — say — francophone countries. Where this is envisaged, the explicit approval for progression as a single language version needs to be obtained as soon as possible. It may be useful, for example for future reference, if a formal record of the decision is obtained. Further language versions can always be prepared as a translation of the published text.

SG.6 Translations

Under the terms of the ISO Statutes, as supplemented by the agreement ISO policies and procedures for copyright, copyright exploitation rights and sales of ISO publications (ISO POCOSA), the member bodies of ISO may, under their sole responsibility, prepare translations into other languages of certain ISO publications and documents.

Annex SH
(normative)

Procedures for the standardization of graphical symbols

SH.1 Introduction

This annex describes the procedures to be adopted in the submission and subsequent approval and registration, when appropriate, of all graphical symbols appearing in ISO documents.

Within ISO the responsibility for the coordination of the development of graphical symbols has been subdivided into two principal areas, allocated to two ISO technical committees:

- ISO/TC 145 – all graphical symbols (except those for use in technical product documentation) (see ISO/TC 145 website);
- ISO/TC 10 – graphical symbols for technical product documentation (tpd) (see ISO/TC 10 website).

In addition there is coordination with IEC/TC 3 (Information structures, documentation and graphical symbols) and with IEC/TC 3/SC 3C (Graphical symbols for use on equipment).

The basic objectives of the standardization of graphical symbols are to:

- meet the needs of users;
- ensure that the interests of all concerned ISO committees are taken into account;
- ensure that graphical symbols are unambiguous and conform to consistent sets of design criteria;
- ensure that there is no duplication or unnecessary proliferation of graphical symbols.

The basic steps in the standardization of a new graphical symbol are:

- identification of need;
- elaboration;
- evaluation;
- approval, when appropriate;
- registration;
- publication.

All steps should be carried out by electronic means.

- Proposals for new or revised graphical symbols may be submitted by an ISO committee, a liaison member of an ISO committee or any ISO member organization (hereafter jointly called the “proposer”).

- Each approved graphical symbol will be allocated a unique number to facilitate its management and identification through a register that provides information that can be retrieved in an electronic format.
- Conflicts with the relevant requirements and guidelines for graphical symbols shall be resolved by liaison and dialogue between ISO/TC 145 or ISO/TC 10 and the product committee concerned at the earliest possible stage.

SH.2 All graphical symbols except those for use in technical product documentation

SH.2.1 General

ISO/TC 145 is responsible within ISO for the overall coordination of standardization in the field of graphical symbols (except for tpd). This responsibility includes:

- standardization in the field of graphical symbols as well as of colours and shapes, whenever these elements form part of the message that a symbol is intended to convey, e.g. a safety sign;
- establishing principles for preparation, coordination and application of graphical symbols: general responsibility for the review and the coordination of those already existing, those under study, and those to be established.

The standardization of letters, numerals, punctuation marks, mathematical signs and symbols, and symbols for quantities and units is excluded. However, such elements may be used as components of a graphical symbol.

The review and co-ordination role of ISO/TC 145 applies to all committees that undertake the responsibility for creation and standardization of graphical symbols within their own particular fields.

ISO/TC 145 has allocated these responsibilities as follows:

- ISO/TC 145/SC 1: Public information symbols;
- ISO/TC 145/SC 2: Safety identification, signs, shapes, symbols and colours;
- ISO/TC 145/SC 3: Graphical symbols for use on equipment.
















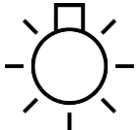



There is also liaison with ISO/TC 10 and with IEC, in particular with IEC/SC 3C, Graphical symbols for use on equipment.

Table SH.1 shows the categories of graphical symbols covered by each coordinating committee.

Table SH.1 — Categories of graphical symbols

	Basic message	Location	Target audience	Design principles	Overview	Responsible committee
Public information symbols	Location of service or facility	In public areas	General public	ISO 22727	ISO 7001	ISO/TC 145/SC 1
Safety signs (symbols)	Related to safety and health of persons	In workplaces and public areas	a) General public or b) authorized and trained persons	ISO 3864-1 ISO 3864-3	ISO 7010	ISO/TC 145/SC 2
Product safety labels	Related to safety and health of persons	On products	c) General public or d) authorized and trained persons	ISO 3864-2 ISO 3864-3	—	ISO/TC 145/SC 2
Graphical symbols for use on equipment	Related to equipment	On equipment	e) General public, or f) authorized and trained persons	IEC 80416-1 ISO 80416-2 IEC 80416-3	ISO 7000 IEC 60417	ISO/TC 145/SC 3 IEC/TC 3/SC 3C
tpd symbols	(Product representation)	Technical product documentation (drawings, diagrams, etc.)	Trained persons	ISO 81714-1	ISO 14617 IEC 60617	ISO/TC 10/SC 10 IEC/TC 3

Table SH.2 — Examples of different types of graphical symbols shown in their context of use

Public information symbols	 Telephone ISO 7001 – 008	 Aircraft ISO 7001 – 022	 Sporting activities ISO 7001 – 029	 Gasoline station ISO 7001 – 009	 Direction ISO 7001 – 001
Safety signs (symbols)	 Means of escape and emergency equipment signs: E001 – Emergency exit (left hand)	 Fire safety signs: F001 – Fire extinguisher	 Mandatory action signs: M001 – General mandatory action sign	 Prohibition signs: P002 – No smoking	 Warning signs: W002 – Warning; Explosive material
Product safety labels	 Supplementary safety information (text or symbol)	 Signal Word Supplementary safety information (text or symbol)			
Graphical symbols for use on equipment	 Ventilating fan: Air-circulating fan ISO 7000 – 0089	 Parking Brake ISO 7000 – 0238	 Weight ISO 7000 – 0430	 Lamp; lighting; illumination IEC 60417 – 5012	 Brightness / Contrast IEC 60417 – 5435
tpd symbols	 Two-way valve ISO 14617-8 – 2101	 Surface texture with special characteristics ISO 1302, Figure 4			

SH.2.2 Submission of proposals

Proposers shall submit their proposals on the relevant application form as soon as possible to the secretariat of the appropriate ISO/TC 145 subcommittee in order to allow for timely review and comment. It is strongly recommended that this submission be made by proposers at the CD stage, but it shall be no later than the first enquiry stage (i.e. DIS or DAM) in the case of an International Standard.

Prior to submitting a graphical symbol proposal, the proposer should:

- be able to demonstrate the need for the proposed graphical symbol;
- have reviewed the relevant ISO and/or IEC standards of graphical symbols, in order to avoid ambiguity and/or overlap with existing standardized graphical symbols, and to check for consistency with any related graphical symbol or family of graphical symbols already standardized;
- create the proposed graphical symbol in accordance with the relevant standards and instructions, these include design principles and criteria of acceptance.

SH.2.3 Standardization procedure for proposed graphical symbols

Upon receipt of a proposal, the ISO/TC 145 sub-committee concerned shall review the application form, within two months, to check whether it has been correctly completed and the relevant graphics file(s) has been correctly provided. If necessary, the proposer will be invited to modify the application, and to re-submit it.

Upon receipt of a correctly completed application form, a formal review process shall be commenced to review the proposal for consistency with standardized graphical symbols, the relevant design principles and criteria of acceptance.

When this formal review process has been completed, the results shall be transmitted to the proposer, together with any recommendations. The proposer will, where appropriate, be invited to modify the proposal, and to re-submit it for a further review.

The procedures outlined on the relevant ISO/TC 145 sub-committee website shall be followed:

- ISO/TC 145/SC 1: Public information symbols (www.iso.org/tc145/sc1);
- ISO/TC 145/SC 2: Safety identification, signs, shapes, symbols and colours (www.iso.org/tc145/sc2);
- ISO/TC 145/SC 3: Graphical symbols for use on equipment (www.iso.org/tc145/sc3).

Field Code Changed

These websites also provide application forms for the submission of proposals.

Graphical symbols approved by ISO/TC 145 shall be assigned a definitive registration number and included in the relevant ISO/TC 145 standard.

NOTE In exceptional cases, unregistered symbols may be included in ISO standards subject to TMB approval.

SH.3 Graphical symbols for use in technical product documentation (tpd) (ISO/TC 10)

ISO/TC 10 is responsible for the overall responsibility for standardization in the field of graphical symbols for technical product documentation (tpd). This responsibility includes

- maintenance of ISO 81714-1: Design of graphical symbols for use in the technical documentation of products – Part 1: Basic rules, in co-operation with IEC;

- standardization of graphical symbols to be used in technical product documentation, co-ordinated with IEC;
- establishing and maintaining a database for graphical symbols including management of registration numbers

Included is the standardization of symbols for use in diagrams and pictorial drawings. ISO/TC 10 has allocated these responsibilities to ISO/TC 10/SC 10. The Secretariat of ISO/TC 10/SC 10 is supported by a maintenance group.

Any committee identifying the need for new or revised graphical symbols for tpd shall as soon as possible submit their proposal to the secretariat of [ISO/TC 10/SC 10](#) for review and — once approved — allocation of a registration number.

Annex SI
(normative)

**Procedure for the development of International Workshop
Agreements (IWA)**

SI.1 Proposals to develop IWAs

A proposal to hold an ISO workshop for the purpose of developing one or more IWAs on a particular subject may come from any source, including ISO member bodies, liaison organizations, corporate bodies etc. An organization that is not an ISO member body or liaison organization, or is not international in scope, shall inform the ISO member body in its country of its intent to submit such a proposal.

Whenever practicable, proposers shall provide details concerning:

- Purpose and justification of the proposal;
- Relevant documents; and
- Cooperation and liaison,

in accordance with the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1, Annex C.

Additionally, wherever possible, proposals shall include indication of an ISO Member Body willing to provide secretariat support to the IWA Workshop. If it is considered likely that participation in the workshop will need to be limited (see SJ.5.2), this shall also be indicated.

In some circumstances, it may be considered that several meetings may be needed in order to reach a consensus. In such cases, the proposer is encouraged, or may be required by the ISO Technical Management Board, to develop a business plan which would give details concerning meeting schedules, expected dates of availability of draft documents, the possibility that a workshop may establish project teams to progress work between meetings of the workshop, the expected date of availability of any IWA, etc.

SI.2 Review of proposals

Proposals will be referred to the ISO Technical Management Board for approval. If the proposal is accepted, the ISO/TMB will initiate consultations with member bodies to identify a candidate willing to act as the organizer and to provide administrative and logistics support to the proposer. Preference will normally be given to:

- The member body from the country of the proposer, if the proposer is not a member body;
or
- Member bodies holding secretariats in fields related to that covered by the proposal.

If there is more than one offer, the ISO/TMB will formally designate the member body assigned to act as the workshop secretariat. The assigned ISO member body may establish financial arrangements with the proposer to cover administrative and logistics support costs for the workshop. If a member body is not willing to act as workshop secretariat, the ISO/TMB may authorize the ISO Central Secretariat to fulfill this role, provided all associated costs are recovered by workshop registration fees.

An informative checklist for estimating IWA workshop costs is provided in SI.10.

The workshop secretariat and the proposer shall designate the chairman of the workshop

SI.3 Announcement

Once the workshop secretariat and the proposer have agreed on a date and venue for the first meeting of the workshop, these shall be communicated to the ISO member bodies. These details shall be further announced by the workshop secretariat, the ISO Central Secretariat and by any other interested member bodies in the most appropriate way(s) to achieve the widest possible circulation (e.g. a publicly accessible website). This may include a number of different announcement options and media, but the intent is to ensure that the broadest range of relevant interested parties worldwide are informed of the workshop and have the opportunity to attend.

The proposer and workshop secretariat will ensure that any ISO committees with projects relevant to the subject will be invited to be represented at the workshop.

A registration fee may be applied to help support preparation and hosting of the workshop. Any registration fees shall be stated in the workshop announcement.

NOTE When the subject matter of a workshop is likely to be of interest to developing countries, it is recommended either that a funding mechanism other than a registration fee be applied to facilitate participation from such countries, or that a number of "free" registrations be permitted.

The announcement shall be made at least 90 days in advance of the agreed date to allow potential attendees adequate time to plan on attending the workshop. The announcement shall be accompanied by a registration form to allow potential participants to register for the workshop. Registration forms shall be returned to the workshop Secretariat.

SI.4 Workshop information

A workshop programme detailing workshop objectives, deliverables, agenda, draft documents and any other relevant details for the workshop shall be available, and circulated to registered participants, no later than six weeks prior to the workshop date. Registered participants may submit their own contributions to the workshop secretariat for further distribution to other participants.

SI.5 Participation

SI.5.1 Workshop chairmen

The proposer and workshop secretary shall designate the chairman of any particular workshop. The chairman shall act in a purely international and neutral capacity and in particular shall

- Ensure that all points of view expressed during a workshop are adequately summed up so that they are understood by all present,
- Conduct the workshop with a view to reaching consensus,
- Ensure that all decisions are clearly formulated and, if needed, made available to the participants before closure of the meeting of the workshop.

SI.5.2 Registered participants

Any organization may register as a participant in a workshop and participation will be open to the registered participants only. Participants are not required to be appointed by the ISO member body in their country.

The workshop secretariat, chairman and proposer shall endeavour to ensure that the broadest range of interests is represented in any workshop and that there is an appropriate balance of representation. If needed, this may require that some limitation be placed on participation (for example no more than two registered participants from the same corporate body or organization). If the need to limit participation is expected at the outset, this shall be indicated in the proposal submitted to the [ISO](#) Technical Management Board. If a need for limitation becomes apparent after announcement of the workshop, this shall be authorized by the TMB secretariat following consultation with the [ISO](#)/TMB chairman and, if needed, other [ISO](#)/TMB members.

SI.5.3 Project teams

In cases in which more than one meeting will be required to reach consensus, a workshop may establish one or more project teams to progress work between meetings of the workshop. The workshop shall designate the membership of such project teams, ensuring that their working methods will allow all interests to participate fully.

SI.6 Workshop procedures and management oversight

Workshops will be permitted to work in a practically autonomous manner using very flexible procedures.

However, there are a number of general ISO policies which need to be respected, in particular those concerning intellectual property rights and the use of SI units. It shall be the responsibility of the workshop secretariat to ensure that the appropriate policies are known to registered participants and are respected.

Management oversight will be kept to the minimum required to ensure coordination with existing standardization activities if relevant and to ensure that appropriate resource is provided by the ISO system. It will be the responsibility of the workshop chairman to determine when consensus of the workshop participants has been reached on a particular item or deliverable. For the purposes of determining consensus, the workshop chairman shall apply the following definition contained in ISO/IEC Guide 2: [19962004 and ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1, clause 2.5.6](#).

Consensus

General agreement, characterized by the absence of sustained opposition to substantial issues by any important part of the concerned interests and by a process that involves seeking to take into account the views of all parties concerned and to reconcile any conflicting arguments.

NOTE Consensus need not imply unanimity.

It should be noted that an IWA workshop may arrive at the consensus that an IWA deliverable is not necessary.

The workshop deliverables shall contain a description of the workshop consensus achieved including any recommendations for possible future actions or revisions to the workshop deliverables. The deliverable resulting from the workshop will proceed to publication based on the consensus of the workshop without additional reviews or approvals by any other body, except in the case of an appeal on such a deliverable (see immediately below).

SI.7 Appeals

Any parties affected by the deliverable resulting from the workshop shall have the right of appeal for the following reasons:

- The workshop and the process to arrive at its deliverable have not complied with these procedures;
- The deliverable resulting from the workshop is not in the best interests of international trade and commerce, or such public factors as safety, health or the environment; or
- The contents of the deliverable resulting from the workshop conflict with existing or draft ISO standard(s) or may be detrimental to the reputation of ISO.

Such appeals shall be submitted within two months of the date of the workshop and shall be considered by the ISO Technical Management Board which in such circumstances will take the final decision concerning publication of an IWA.

SI.8 Workshop deliverables and publication

Workshops will decide on the content of their own deliverables, but it is strongly recommended that the drafting rules in Part 2 of the ISO/IEC Directives be followed. The workshop secretariat and proposer shall be responsible for preparation of the text in compliance with Part 2 of the ISO/IEC Directives. Deliverables shall be sent to the ISO Central Secretariat for publication as International Workshop Agreements. They will be numbered in a special IWA series. Each IWA shall include the list of participants in the workshop that developed it.

IWAs may be published in one of the official ISO languages only and competing IWAs on the same subject are permitted. The technical content of an IWA may compete with the technical content of an existing ISO or IEC standard, or the proposed content of an ISO or IEC standard under development, but conflict is not normally permitted unless expressly authorized by the [ISO/TMB](#).

SI.9 Review of IWAs

Three years after publication, the member body which provided the workshop secretariat will be requested to organize the review of an IWA, consulting interested market players as well as, if needed, the relevant ISO committee(s). The result of the review may be to confirm the IWA for a further three year period, to withdraw the IWA or to submit it for further processing as another ISO deliverable in accordance with Part 1 of the ISO/IEC Directives.

An IWA may be further processed to become a Publicly Available Specification, a Technical Specification or an International Standard, according to the market requirement.

An IWA may exist for a maximum of six years following which it shall either be withdrawn or be converted into another ISO deliverable.

SI.10 Checklist to estimate costs associated with hosting an ISO IWA Workshop (WS)

Completion of this checklist is NOT mandatory for the proposed hosting of an IWA. It is intended simply as a tool to assist proposers and assigned ISO member bodies in determining major costs associated with hosting an ISO IWA Workshop. Some of the sample costs provided may not be applicable to particular IWA Workshops, or may be covered in a different manner than is described below.

SI.10.1 Overall measures to consider

Expected number of deliverables	
Expected number of Project Groups	
Expected number of participants	
Expected number of WS plenary meetings	
Expected number of Project Group meetings	

SI.10.2 Planned Resources — Human Resource Requirements & Functions

Function	Who	Estimated Cost	Covered by ... (Who)	Commitment (Y/N)
WS Secretariat <ul style="list-style-type: none"> — organizing WS plenary meetings — producing WS and project meeting reports and action lists — administrative contact point for WS projects — managing WS (and project group) membership lists — managing WS (and project group) document registers — follow-up of action lists — if the Workshop works mainly by electronic means, assist Chairperson in monitoring and follow-up of electronic discussion 				
WS Chairperson <ul style="list-style-type: none"> — chairing WS plenary meetings — responsible for overall WS/project management — producing project management progress reports — acting as formal liaison with related WS/projects and liaison body — if the Workshop works mainly by electronic means, follow and steer electronic discussions that take place between meetings, take necessary decisions 				
WS Vice chairperson If your WS will have "Vice Chairperson(s)", you should list them here, along with their particular functions and fill-in the right side of this table.				
Project Leader(s) (where applicable) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> — chairing project group meetings — producing project group meeting reports and action lists — preparing project group progress reports — if the Workshop works mainly by electronic means, follow and steer electronic discussions that take place — regarding his/her particular project 				
IWA Editor <ul style="list-style-type: none"> — editing of the IWA texts — attend meetings — follow discussions relating to the IWA (s) that he/she is editing 				

SI.10.3 Planned Resources — Material Resource Requirements

Material Resource costs	Numbers	Estimated Cost per meeting	Covered by ... (Who)	Commitment (Y/N)
WS Meetings				
Meeting rooms				
Logistics (IT support, photocopies, etc.)				
Food and beverage				
Interpretation during meetings				

Annex SJ
(normative)

Forms

These are available in electronic format (typically MS Word) for download from www.iso.org/forms.

Annex SK (normative)

Procedure for the development and maintenance of standards in database format

SK.1 Introduction

This annex ~~of the ISO supplement to the ISO/IEC Directives~~ describes a procedure for the development, maintenance, review and withdrawal of any international Standard consisting of “collections of items” ~~managed in a database and applies only to databases managed by the ISO Central Secretariat~~. Such items may include graphical symbols of all kinds, sets of definitions, sets of dimensions, dictionaries of data element types with associated classification schema and other standards in which collections of objects require maintenance (addition or amendment) on a continual basis. In compliance with the ISO/IEC Directives, the development of a new standard requires a new work item proposal (NP), whereas an NP is not needed for the maintenance of an existing standard.

Supplementary procedural information, requirements or criteria that apply to particular standards database(s) can be described in separate document(s) within the domain of the responsible technical committee or subcommittee. These supplementary documents shall not be in conflict with this generic procedure or with the ISO/IEC Directives.

This procedure supports different types of processes (see SK.2.1). The execution of the maintenance (see SK.2.1b)) and the withdrawal process (see SK.2.1c)) are typically the responsibility of a secretary of a TC or SC. It is, however, also possible that this responsibility is assigned to a maintenance agency in which case the term “TC/SC secretary” relates to the individual or group of individuals in the maintenance agency with a corresponding responsibility for the execution of the two processes. In this case the current procedure may be applied as a reference to organize similar functions by maintenance agencies.

This procedure is not directly applicable to Registration Authorities, however, relevant aspects of the procedure (e.g. SK.2.3) may be adapted for use in similar functions organized by Registration Authorities.

SK.2 Procedure

SK.2.1 Overview

The procedure described in this document assumes the use of a web-accessible database and electronic communication. As far as possible, automated database functions shall be applied to ensure that the content of the database is consistent. Due care shall be taken to ensure that the content is correct especially if it is used directly by computer applications.

The procedure supports four main processes:

- a) The process for the development of new standards, which starts with a new work item proposal (NP) and follows the normal stages of the standards development process as defined in the ISO/IEC Directives (including any options for the skipping of certain stages if there is agreement that the item(s) under development are mature enough to be progressed to later stages).
- b) The maintenance process initiated by a change request (CR), which consists of the preliminary activities, followed by either the normal database procedure or the extended database procedure.

- c) The withdrawal process initiated by a change request (CR) which consists of the preliminary activities followed by the normal database procedure.
- d) The systematic review process, which follows the regular procedure for the systematic review.

Figure SK.1 (new development and maintenance process) and SK.2 (withdrawal and systematic review process) provide an overview of the four processes.

There exist maximum time frames for the various process stages (an overview is given in SK.3 for the normal database procedure and in Figure SK.4 for the extended database procedure). For the preliminary activities and for the normal database procedure, a committee may decide to apply time frames which are shorter than the maximum time frames defined in this procedure. However, each member of the Validation Team has the right to request an extension. Any extension up to the maximum time frame shall be granted. As a principle, the TC/SC secretary may close a ballot after votes have been received from all members of the Validation Team. As an exception, TCs/SCs may decide on extensions of the maximum time frames defined in this procedure on a case-by-case basis, depending on the number of items to be processed or their complexity.

SK.2.2 Preliminary activities

This is the initial part of the maintenance or withdrawal process that shall be completed for every Change Request (CR) and consists of the following stages.

SK.2.2.1 Initiation of Change Request

A Change Request is submitted by a proposer and then entered by the TC/SC secretary in a web-accessible database.

SK.2.2.2 Preparation for evaluation

Preparation by the secretary of the technical committee or subcommittee (TC/SC) to ensure that all mandatory entries of the Change Request (CR) are appropriately filled-in and that any necessary accompanying items are of a quality sufficient for evaluation.

For pragmatic or other reasons, e.g. close relationship between items or different level of maturity, the secretary may decide to combine items proposed under more than one CR into one work package or to separate items submitted under one CR into several work packages for processing as a unit.

NOTE 1 More detailed rules applicable to a specific standard can be provided by the TC/SC responsible for the standard.

If required, a Maintenance Team may be set up to assist the secretary in the preparation activities.

NOTE 2 The term "Maintenance Team" (MT) refers to a group of experts set up by the TC/SC to carry out the maintenance of an already existing standard.

NOTE 3 The time required for this work should normally not exceed 1 month, but might exceptionally be longer if the original proposal is not mature enough. In such a case the preparation is comparable to "stage 0" work and the time has to be counted from final agreement with the proposer.

NOTE 4 It is expected that the MT will only be established when the preparation activities make up a substantial amount of the total work required. When the standard covers a wide range of technical domains the MT may rely on domain expertise from TCs/SCs for checking and revising the content of the item(s) associated with the Change Request(s).

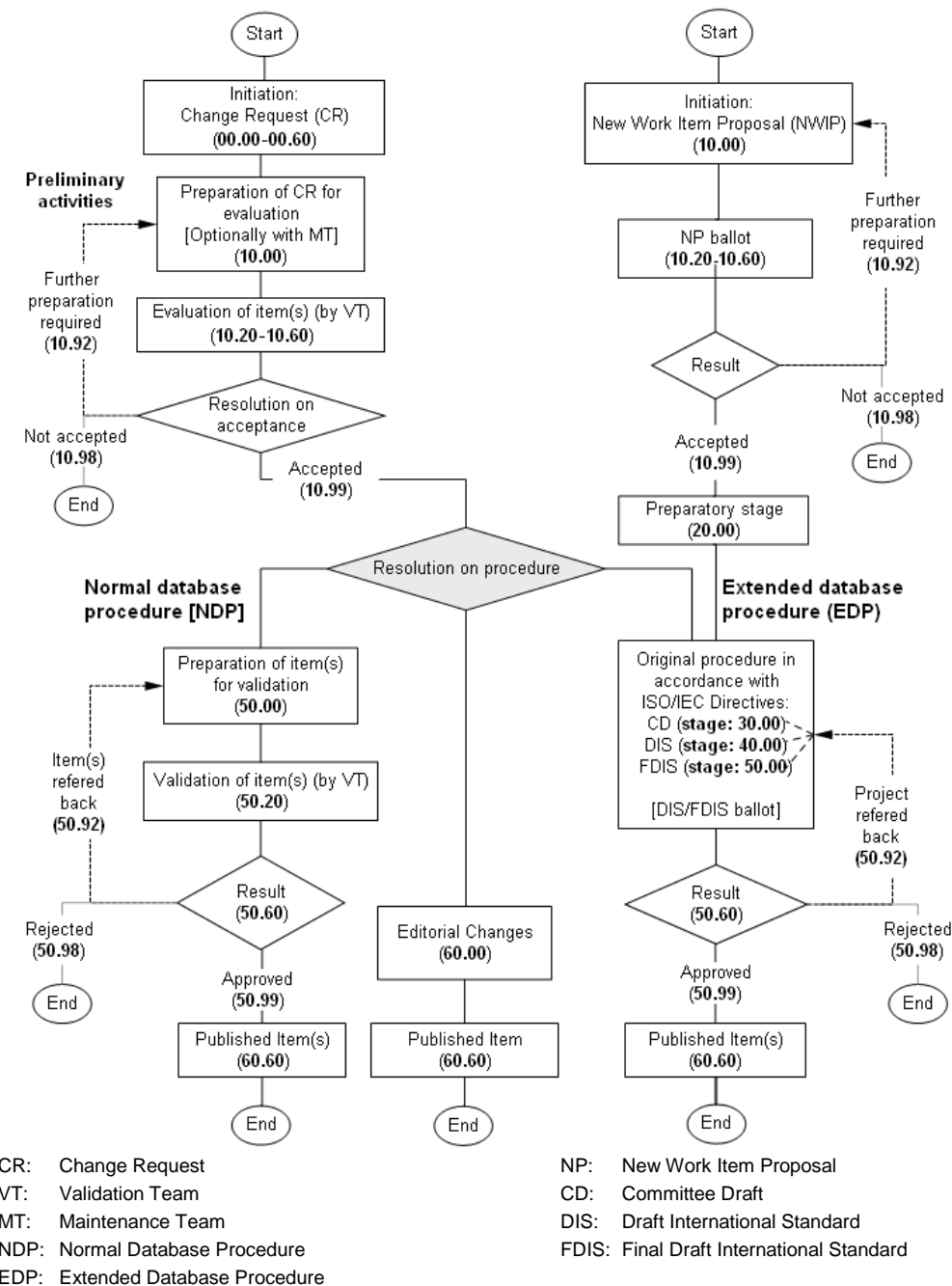


Figure SK.1 — Process for the development of new standards and the maintenance of existing standards

SK.2.2.3 Evaluation of the CR

Action by the Validation Team to determine whether the Change Request is within the scope of the database standard and valid for further work or should be rejected.

When the quality of the information provided at the preparation stage is satisfactory, the status identifier of the Change Request is changed to *for evaluation* and the Validation Team is informed (with copies to the proposer and possibly other relevant TCs/SCs) and asked by the secretary to make an evaluation and to comment. The evaluation of the Change Request should be completed within 2 months.

SK.2.2.4 Resolution

Observation by the TC/SC secretary on the comments and general opinions of the members of the Validation Team followed by the conclusion whether the Change Request should be

- continued with the normal database procedure; or
- continued with the extended database procedure; or
- continued with the procedure for editorial changes; or
- improved and re-evaluated; or
- rejected altogether.

NOTE 1 The entry of a new item in the database is not to be seen as “new work”, but rather as part of the continuous maintenance of the existing collection. Therefore, to arrive at the conclusion, a simple majority of the submitted votes can be used at the evaluation stage, applying to the choice between continuation/rejection as well as to normal/extended database procedure.

NOTE 2 If the original Change Request references many items, and if some of these might be acceptable for continuation with the normal database procedure while others are not, the original CR may be divided into two or more new CRs and processed separately. Such new CRs start at the status level already achieved.

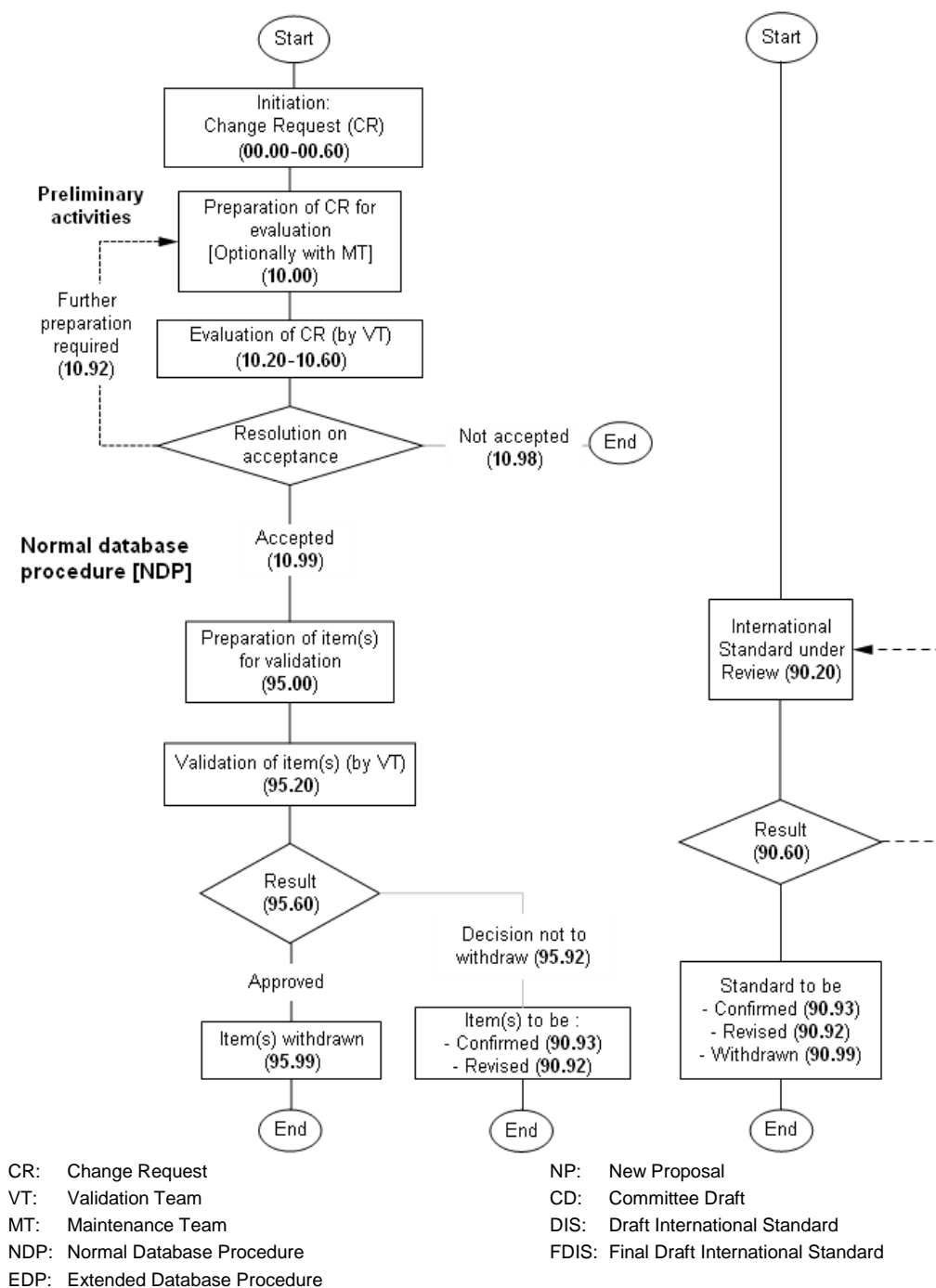


Figure SK.2 — Overview of the processes for the withdrawal and the systematic review of existing standards

SK.2.3 The normal database procedure

SK.2.3.1 General

The normal database procedure is faster than the extended procedure as described in SK.2.4 and relies on the use of the Validation Team acting on behalf of the member bodies for the final voting on proposals.

The normal database procedure is typically applicable for changes to existing items or for their withdrawal or for new items within the scope of the database standard or in cases where there is an urgent need for standardization.

NOTE More detailed rules applicable to a specific standard can be provided by the TC/SC responsible for the standard.

Figure SL.3 shows a process map of this procedure.

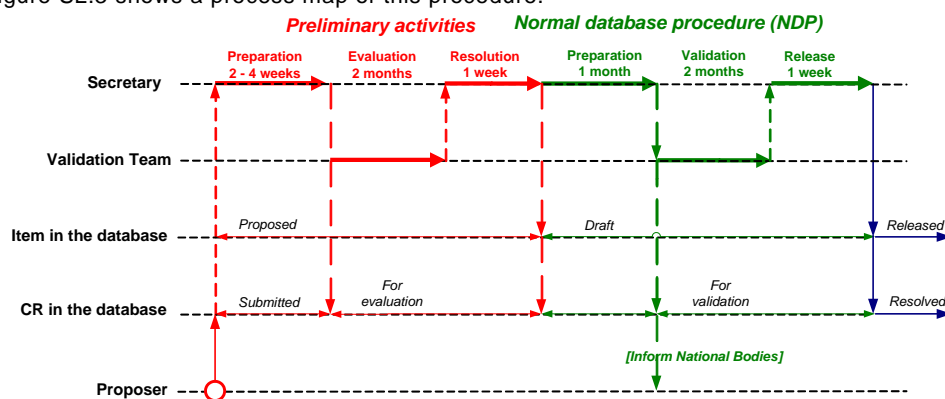


Figure SK.3 — Process map of the normal database procedure including preliminary activities

SK.2.3.2 Preparation for validation

The TC/SC secretary revises the proposal in line with the comments received during the evaluation stage and checks that the item(s) associated with the CR are, after possible changes, sufficiently and properly described, within the scope of the database standard and consistent with already existing items. If required, corrections are made. For this, the secretary might seek assistance from the Maintenance Team or from other internal or external experts. This preparation should be carried out within 1 month.

SK.2.3.3 Validation

When the quality of the information is satisfactory, the status identifier of the Change Request is changed to *for validation*, and the Validation Team called to vote by the secretary, with copies to the proposer, the P-members of the TC/SC and possibly other relevant TCs/SCs. The members of the TC/SC within which the validation is conducted, should have visibility of the item(s) under validation as well as of the final vote result by the Validation Team. Voting should be completed within 2 months.

If the proposed item(s) are accepted, the status identifier of the item(s) is changed to *released*. If they are not accepted, then the reason(s) are noted and the status identifier of the item(s) is set to *rejected*.

The criteria applied are the same as those for the voting on a normal FDIS. In the case of abstentions, the vote is not counted.

After setting the final status identifiers for the items and noting the reasons, the status identifier of the change request is set to *resolved*, and the procedure is finished (maximum 2 weeks).

With the normal database procedure it is possible for proposals to be approved within approximately 5 months.

SK.2.3.4 Report to the technical committee/subcommittee

A TC/SC decides on the reporting mechanism it wishes to apply to inform its members on changes resulting from the application of the normal database procedure.

SK.2.4 The extended database procedure

SK.2.4.1 General

The extended database procedure respects all stages of the procedure described in the ISO/IEC Directives for the approval of standards as printed documents, the *original procedure* and involves the member bodies in the traditional way. However, as with the normal database procedure, the information in the database is considered as the original source of information. The extended database procedure is applied for the development of new standards. It may also be applied for the maintenance of existing standards. However, it is expected that in the majority of maintenance cases, the normal database procedure will be followed and that the extended database procedure will only be required for cases in which the maintenance is complex and involves substantial modifications to a standard.

The extended database procedure is described below including all stages and associated throughput times. It is possible that there could be comments against an item, so that the CD or DIS stage might need to be repeated (as described in the ISO/IEC Directives).

Figure SK.4 shows a “process map” with the different roles indicated along the vertical axis. This diagram highlights the flow, and indicates clearly when the different roles have to be active.

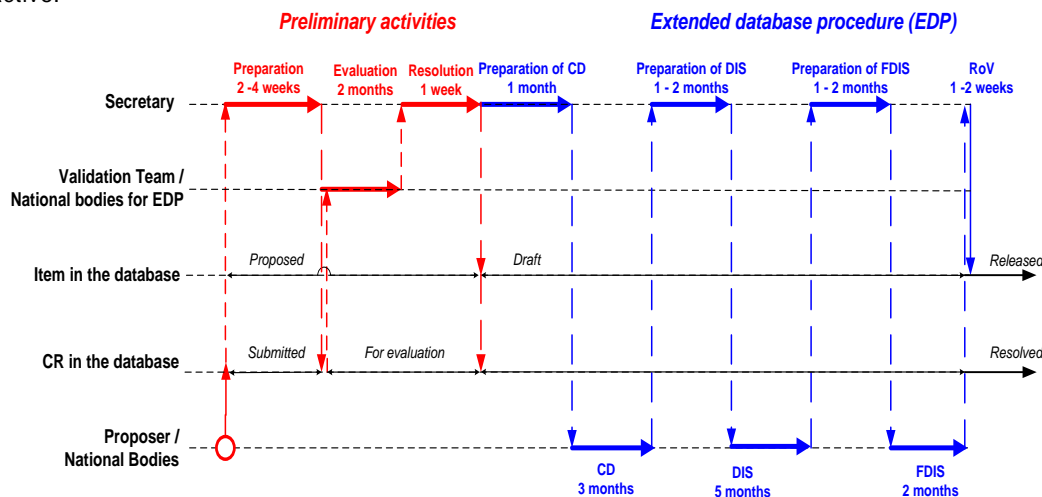


Figure SK.4 — Process map of the extended database procedure including preliminary activities

A short description of each of the stages of the extended database procedure is given below:

SK.2.4.2 Preparation of the CD

The TC/SC secretary checks that the item(s) are sufficiently and properly described, and that comments received during the evaluation stage have been adequately reflected. In case the extended database procedure is applied for the maintenance of an existing standard, it should be checked that the item(s) are within the scope of the database standard and consistent with items already existing in the database. If required, corrections are made. The secretary might in this work seek assistance from the Maintenance Team or from other internal or external experts. The preparation of the CD should be carried out within 1 month.

SK.2.4.3 Committee draft

When the proposed item(s) are sufficiently well prepared, the secretary issues a formal CD to the parameters, informing them that the CD is available for commenting within the normal time frame for a CD. Comments are to be submitted in the normal way (3 months).

SK.2.4.4 Preparation of the DIS

The comments are compiled and made available as an ordinary compilation of comments (published on the web server). The item(s) and their associated information are prepared for the DIS stage, taking note of the comments (maximum 2 months).

SK.2.4.5 DIS

When sufficiently prepared, the office of the CEO issues a DIS to the member bodies with the information that the item(s) are available for commenting and voting for acceptance as a DIS, within the normal time frame for a DIS (5 months).

SK.2.4.6 Preparation of the FDIS

The comments are compiled and the votes counted are made available as an ordinary compilation of comments and result of voting on a DIS. The item(s) and their associated information are prepared for the FDIS stage, taking note of possible purely editorial comments (maximum 2 months).

NOTE If the DIS is unanimously approved, the contained items may be published directly after the preparation and circulation of the report of voting on the DIS, without circulation of an FDIS, in accordance with the original procedure.

SK.2.4.7 FDIS

The office of the CEO issues a FDIS to the member bodies with the indication, that the item(s) are available for voting for approval as an IS, within the normal time frame for a FDIS (2 months).

NOTE In accordance with the present ISO rules the FDIS stage may be omitted if the DIS is unanimously approved.

SK.2.4.8 Report of voting (RoV)

A report of voting is prepared and published. If proposed item(s) are accepted, the status identifier of the item(s) is changed to *released*. If they are not accepted, then the reason(s) are noted and the status identifier of the item(s) is set to *rejected*.

After completing setting the final status identifiers for the items and the reasons are noted, the status identifier of the change request is set to *resolved*, and the procedure is finished (maximum 2 weeks). With the extended database procedure it is possible for proposals to be approved within 12 months up to a maximum of 18 months.

SK.2.5 Editorial changes to an existing item

Proposed changes to an item that affect neither its use nor semantics (i.e. editorial changes) only require going through the preliminary activities (see SK.2.2). It is not required to continue with either the normal or the extended database procedure. At the end of the preliminary activities the change is either accepted or rejected without further validation.

More specific criteria on which changes may be classified as editorial changes can differ dependent on the standard and are described in separate document(s) within the scope of the responsible TC/SC.

After a positive resolution, the TC/SC secretary will make the changes to the existing item(s). The status identifier of the Change Request is set to *resolved* and the work is finished. If not accepted, then the reason(s) are noted in the comments, the status identifier of the Change Request is set to *resolved* and the work is finished.

SK.2.6 Regular maintenance of the entire standard

In addition to the continuous maintenance of the standard described above, a comprehensive review of a database standard at regular intervals may be necessary which is organized in accordance with the rules in the ISO/IEC Directives and the ISO Supplement for the systematic review process.

The results are to be entered formally into the database.

SK.2.7 Appeals

If, at any time after acceptance of an item as *released*, a member body is dissatisfied with the result of the validation process on item(s), it may bring forward a Change Request with a proposal for an amendment to the item(s) which will re-open consideration under the procedures described above.

SK.3 Terms for general use

SK.3.1

original procedure

traditional standardization procedure for standard publications as described in the ISO/IEC Directives and the ISO supplement relying on the circulation of documents with standardized content to the member bodies

SK.3.2

normal database procedure

NDP

standardization procedure making use of a *Validation Team* and a **workflow around a database** for information sharing (as specified in this annex)

NOTE The normal database procedure is used for validation of new items and of item combinations that are within the boundary of existing rules.

SK.3.3

extended database procedure

EDP

standardization procedure with stages and time frames as specified in the *original procedure*, but implemented as a **workflow around a database** for information sharing (as specified in this document)

SK.3.4

Maintenance Team

MT

group of experts that may be set up by a parent committee following the rules in the ISO/IEC Directives for the establishment of working groups

NOTE A MT may be called upon by the TC/SC secretary to provide expertise in the preparation of Change Requests or items for evaluation or validation.

SK.3.5

Validation Team

VT

permanent, “executive”, group of individuals appointed by and acting as delegates on behalf of their member bodies, A-liaison organizations and committee-internal liaisons to validate proposed items and vote for their release as part of a database standard

NOTE 1 All P-members, A-liaison organizations and committee-internal liaisons have the right to appoint one member to the team. A Validation Team comprises a minimum of 5 P-members. Representatives of P-members have the right to vote, representatives of A-liaisons and committee-internal liaisons do not have the right to vote, but may submit comments.

NOTE 2 The described procedure asks for very short response times from the Validation Team members. Therefore, the member bodies should appoint one or more deputies that can take over the task when the official member is unavailable (due to travel, business, etc.).

NOTE 3 The appointing bodies decide on the duration of an appointment. They should also organize any supporting network of experts at national level.

NOTE 4 The TC/SC secretariat manages the Validation Team.

SK.3.6

proposer

person (or body) submitting a Change Request

SK.3.7

database standard

standard in database format for which a valid form of publication is a publicly accessible database, containing the standardized items

NOTE The term Standards as database may be used as a synonym.

SK.3.8

item (of a database standard)

separately identified and managed structured object in a database

NOTE Typical examples of items are: symbol (graphical or letter), term, data element type, data sheet, code.

SK.3.9

Change Request

CR

task description for addition, withdrawal or change of one or more items in a database standard, submitted by an authorized person or body, which will be reviewed and updated by the TC/SC secretary, possibly with the support of a Maintenance Team, for evaluation by the Validation Team

NOTE It is possible that changes to the database standard resulting from several change requests are combined, or that a single change request is subdivided, at any stage in the process.

SK.3.10

work package

set of one or more items associated with a change request

SK.4 Terms for the status identification of Change Requests

SK.4.1

submitted

status identifier of the change request from the moment of its registration and identification in the database, until the TC/SC secretary has finished the preparation for the evaluation stage

SK.4.2

for evaluation

status identifier of the Change Request in the evaluation stage until a resolution has been reached on how to proceed following the preliminary activities

NOTE The transition to For evaluation is from Submitted.

SK.4.3

for validation

status identifier of the Change Request in the validation stage as part of the normal database procedure until the validation is completed

NOTE The transition to For validation is from For evaluation.

SK.4.4

resolved

status identifier of the change request after completion of the normal or the extended database procedure, or after rejection

SK.5 Terms for the status identification of items

In ISO the status of item(s) is expressed through the harmonized stage code system which consists of a code for each (sub-)stage and associated explanatory text. A concordance between the stage codes and the status identifiers is given below. Since the stage code system is more detailed than the status identifiers, the stages listed below do not express all possible options for the status of item(s).

The status of each item is identified with an own stage code even if several items are part of one work package and are processed as one unit.

SK.5.1

proposed [corresponding stage codes: 00.00 - 10.99]

status identifier of a new item from its registration and identification in the database, until it has been accepted for work and a resolution has been reached on how to proceed following the preliminary activities

SK.5.2

draft [corresponding stage codes: 20.00 - 50.99]

status identifier of a new item that has been accepted for work following the preliminary activities with either the normal or extended database procedure, until the moment a decision has been taken on whether or not it is to be part of the standard

NOTE The transition to *Draft* is from *Proposed*.

SK.5.3

released [corresponding stage code: 60.60]

status identifier of an *item* that has been released for use as part of the standard

NOTE 1 The transition to *Released* is from *Draft*.

NOTE 2 Valid items of a standard can have the status *Released*, *to be revised* (see SK.5.4) or *Confirmed* (see SK.5.5).

SK.5.4

to be revised [corresponding stage code: 90.92]

status identifier of an *item* that is undergoing revision either following the application of the systematic review or withdrawal process, or as a result of the acceptance of a Change Request aiming at a revision of the item

NOTE 1 The transition to *Under revision* is either from *Released* or from *Confirmed*.

NOTE 2 Valid items of a standard can have the status *Released* (see SK.5.3), *to be revised* (see SK.5.4) or *Confirmed* (see SK.5.5).

SK.5.5

confirmed [corresponding stage code: 90.93]

status identifier of an *item* that has been confirmed either following the application of the systematic review or of the withdrawal process

NOTE 1 The transition to *Confirmed* is either from *Released* or from *Confirmed* (in case the item has already been confirmed previously).

NOTE 2 Valid items of a standard can have the status *Released* (see SK.5.3), *to be revised* (see SK.5.4) or *Confirmed* (see SK.5.5).

SK.5.6

withdrawn [corresponding stage code: 95.99]

status identifier of an *item* that is no longer part of the standard, irrespective of reason

NOTE 1 The transition to *Withdrawn* is either from *Released* or from *Confirmed*. A note or a reference to replacing item(s) may further indicate the reason for the withdrawal.

NOTE 2 A withdrawn item remains in the database with the status identifier *Withdrawn* and is not physically deleted.

SK.5.7

rejected [corresponding stage codes: 00.98, 10.98, 20.98, 30.98, 40.98, 50.98]

status identifier of an *item* that has been entered into the database as part of a Change Request, but has not been approved to be part of the standard

NOTE The transition to *Rejected* is either from *Proposed* or from *Draft*.

Annex SL (normative)

Proposals for management system standards

~~SL.1 Whenever it is proposed to establish a new committee for the purpose of preparing management system deliverables, or proposals for new work on management system deliverables are made within existing committees, the additional rules given in ISO Guide 72 shall be followed according to the rules given in SL.2. All such proposals shall be submitted to the TMB for review prior to submission for voting. Furthermore, the TMB shall evaluate the results of voting on proposed new technical committees (TS/Ps), and new work item proposals (NPs) voted at the TC level, prior to their acceptance. The results of voting on NPs at the SC level shall be evaluated by the parent TC, but the results shall also be made available to the TMB for consideration.~~

SL.1 General

~~SL.2 Whenever a proposal is made to prepare a type A or type B deliverable for a new management system standard (MSS), or a proposal is made to revise an existing onetype A or type B management system deliverable, including sectoral applications of generic MSS, a justification study (JS) shall be carried out in accordance with Appendix 1 to this Annex SL ISO Guide 72. To the extent possible, the proposer shall endeavour to identify the full range of deliverables which will constitute the new or revised MSS familyseries, and a JSthe justification study shall be prepared address the need for each of the deliverables and their inter-relationships.~~

~~If, subsequently, it is decided to prepare a type A or type B deliverable that was not covered by the original justification study, a new justification study shall be carried out.~~

~~If no type A or B deliverable exists and a proposal is made to prepare a new type C deliverable or revise an existing type C deliverable, including deliverables for application in specific industry sectors, a justification study shall be carried out unless it can be clearly demonstrated that the deliverable cannot be used as the basis for a certification system.~~

~~If a type A or B deliverable exists and a subsequent decision is to prepare a type C deliverable that was not covered by the original justification study, a justification study shall be carried out unless it can be clearly demonstrated that the deliverable will have no consequence for existing or foreseen certification systems.~~

SL.2 Obligation to submit a JS

All MSS proposals and their JS must be identified by the relevant TC/SC/PC leadership and must be sent to the ISO/TMB (or its MSS task force) for evaluation before the NWI ballot take place. It is the responsibility of the relevant TC/SC/PC secretariat to identify all MSS proposals, without exception, so that there will be no MSS proposals which fail (with knowledge or without knowledge) to carry out the JS or which fail to be sent to the ISO/TMB for evaluation.

SL.3 Cases where no JS have been submitted

MSS proposals which have not been submitted for ISO/TMB evaluation before the NWI ballot will be sent to the ISO/TMB for evaluation and no new ballot should take place before the ISO/TMB decision (project on hold). It is considered good practice that the TC/SC/PC members have cleared the JS prior it is sent to the ISO/TMB.

Formatted: a2, None, Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt, Line spacing: single, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate, Tab stops: Not at 0.71 cm + 0.99 cm

Formatted: p2

Formatted: a2, None, Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt, Line spacing: single, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate, Tab stops: Not at 0.71 cm + 0.99 cm

Formatted: a2, None, Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt, Line spacing: single, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate, Tab stops: Not at 0.71 cm + 0.99 cm

SL.4 Applicability of Annex SL

The above procedures apply to all ISO deliverables except IWAs.

SL.5 Terms and definitions

For the purposes of this annex, the following terms and definitions apply.

SL.5.1 **management system**

See definition contained in Appendix 3 (clause 3.04) of this Annex SL.

SL.5.2 **MSS - Management System Standard**

Standard that provides requirements or guidelines for organizations to develop and systematically manage their policies, processes and procedures in order to achieve specific objectives.

NOTE 1: An effective management system is usually based on managing the organization's processes using a "Plan-Do-Check-Act" approach in order to achieve the intended outcomes

NOTE 2: Such documents typically contains sections addressing the following components:

- policy;
- planning;
- implementation and operation;
- performance assessment;
- improvement;
- management review.

NOTE 3: For the purpose of this document, this definition also applies to other ISO deliverables (TS, PAS...)

SL.5.3 **Type A MSS** **MSS providing requirements**

EXAMPLES

- Management system requirements standards (specifications).
- Management system sector-specific requirements standards.

SL.5.4 **Type B MSS** **MSS providing guidelines**

EXAMPLES

- Guidance on the use of management system requirements standards.
- Guidance on the establishment of a management system.
- Guidance on the improvement/enhancement of a management system.

Formatted: a2, None, Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt, Line spacing: single, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate, Tab stops: Not at 0.71 cm + 0.99 cm

Formatted: a2, None, Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt, Line spacing: single, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate, Tab stops: Not at 0.71 cm + 0.99 cm

SL.5.5**HLS - High Level Structure**

outcome of the work of the ISO/TMB/JTCG "Joint technical Coordination Group on MSS" which refers to high-level structure (HLS), identical subclause titles, identical text and common terms and core definitions.

SL.6 General principles

All projects for new MSS or for the revision of existing MSS must undergo a JS (see SL.1). The following general principles provide guidance to assess the market relevance of proposed MSS and for the preparation of a JS. The justification criteria questions in Appendix 1 to this Annex SL are based on these principles. The answers to the questions will form part of the JS. An MSS should be initiated, developed and maintained only when all of the following principles are observed.

- 1) Market relevance** — Any MSS should meet the needs of, and add value for, the primary and other affected parties.
- 2) Compatibility** — Compatibility between various MSS and within an MSS family should be maintained.
- 3) Topic coverage** — An MSS should have sufficient application coverage to eliminate the need for sector-specific variances.
- 4) Flexibility** — An MSS should be applicable to organizations in all relevant sector cultures and of every size. An MSS should not prevent organizations competitively adding to or differentiating from others, or enhancing management systems beyond the standard.
- 5) Free trade** — An MSS should permit the free trade of goods and services in line with principles included in the WTO Agreement on Technical Barriers to Trade.
- 6) Applicability of conformity assessment** — The market need for first-, second- or third-party conformity assessment, any combination thereof, should be assessed. The resulting MSS should address the suitability of use for conformity assessment in its scope. An MSS should facilitate joint audits.
- 7) Exclusions** — An MSS should not include directly related product (including service) specifications, test methods, performance levels (i.e. setting of limits) or forms of standardization for products produced by the implementing organization.
- 8) Ease of use** — It should be ensured that the user can easily implement one or more MSS. An MSS should be easily understood, unambiguous, free from cultural barriers, easily translatable, and applicable to businesses in general.

SL.7 Justification study process and criteria**SL.7.1 General**

This clause describes the justification study (JS) process for justifying and evaluating the market relevance of proposals for an MSS. Appendix 1 to this Annex SL provides a set of questions to be addressed in the justification study.

SL.7.2 Justification study process

The JS process applies to any MSS project and consists of the following:

- a) the conduct of the JS by (or on behalf of) the proposer of an MSS project;

Formatted: a2, None, Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt, Line spacing: single, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate, Tab stops: Not at 0.71 cm + 0.99 cm

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.5 cm, No bullets or numbering

Formatted: No bullets or numbering, Tab stops: Not at 1.26 cm

Formatted: Indent: Left: 1.14 cm, No bullets or numbering

Formatted: None, Space Before: 0 pt, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate, Tab stops: Not at 1.26 cm

Formatted: Indent: Left: 1.14 cm, No bullets or numbering

Formatted: None, Space Before: 0 pt, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate, Tab stops: Not at 1.26 cm

Formatted: Indent: Left: 1.14 cm, No bullets or numbering

Formatted: None, Space Before: 0 pt, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate, Tab stops: Not at 1.26 cm

Formatted: Indent: Left: 1.14 cm, No bullets or numbering

Formatted: None, Space Before: 0 pt, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate, Tab stops: Not at 1.26 cm

Formatted: Indent: Left: 1.14 cm, No bullets or numbering

Formatted: None, Space Before: 0 pt, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate, Tab stops: Not at 1.26 cm

Formatted: Indent: Left: 1.14 cm, No bullets or numbering

Formatted: None, Space Before: 0 pt, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate, Tab stops: Not at 1.26 cm

Formatted: Indent: Left: 1.14 cm, No bullets or numbering

Formatted: None, Space Before: 0 pt, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate, Tab stops: Not at 1.26 cm

Formatted: a2, None, Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt, Line spacing: single, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate, Tab stops: Not at 0.71 cm + 0.99 cm

Formatted: No bullets or numbering

- b) an approval of the JS by the ISO/TMB (or ISO/TMB MSS task force);

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.71 cm,
No bullets or numbering

The JS process is followed by the normal ISO balloting procedure for new work item approval as appropriate.

SL.7.3 Justification study criteria

Based on Annex C of the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1, 2012, and the general principles stated above, a set of questions (see Appendix 1 to this Annex SL) must be used as criteria for justifying and assessing a proposed MSS project and must be answered by the proposer. This list of questions is not exhaustive and any additional information that is relevant to the case should be provided. The JS should demonstrate that all questions have been considered. If it is decided that they are not relevant or appropriate to a particular situation, then the reasons for this decision should be clearly stated. The unique aspect of a particular MSS may require consideration of additional questions in order to assess objectively its market relevance.

SL.8 Guidance on the development process and structure of an MSS

Formatted: a2, None, Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt, Line spacing: single, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate, Tab stops: Not at 0.71 cm + 0.99 cm

SL.8.1 General

The development of an MSS will have effects in relation to

- the far-reaching impact of these standards on business practice,
- the importance of worldwide support for the standards,
- the practical possibility for involvement by many, if not all, ISO Member Bodies, and
- the market need for compatible and aligned MSS.

This clause provides guidance in addition to the procedures laid down in the ISO/IEC Directives, in order to take these effects into account.

All MSS shall, in principle, use consistent structure, common text and terminology so that they are easy to use and compatible with each other. When developing a MSS Type A, the guidance and structure given in Appendix 3 to this Annex SL shall, in principle, also be followed (based on ISO/TMB Resolution 18/2012).

An MSS which provide guidance on another MSS of the same MSS family should follow the same structure (i.e. clauses numbering). Where MSS providing guidance are involved, it is important that their functions be clearly defined together with their relationship with the MSS providing requirements, for example:

- guidance on the use of the requirements standard;
- guidance on the establishment/implementation of the management system;
- guidance on improvement/enhancement of the management system.

Where the proposed MSS is sector specific:

- it should be compatible and aligned with the generic MSS;
- the relevant committee responsible for the generic MSS may have additional requirements to be met or procedures to be followed;
- other committees may need to be consulted, as well as CASCO on conformity assessment issues.

In the case of sector specific documents, their function and relationship with the generic MSS should be clearly defined (e.g. additional sector-specific requirements; elucidation; or both as appropriate).

Sector-specific documents should always show clearly (e.g. by using different typographical styles) the kind of sector-specific information being provided.

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

NOTE 1 The ISO/TMB/JTCG "Joint Technical Coordination Group on MSS" has produced a set of rules for the addition of discipline specific text to the identical text.

NOTE 2 Where the identical text or any of the requirements cannot be applied in a specific MSS, due to special circumstances, this should be reported to the ISO/TMB through the TMB Secretary at tmb@iso.org.

SL.8.2 MSS development process

SL.8.2.1 General

In addition to the JS, the development of an MSS should follow the same requirements as other ISO deliverables (ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1, clause 2).

SL.8.2.2 Design specification

To ensure that the intention of the standard, as demonstrated by the justification study, will be maintained, a design specification may be developed before a working draft is prepared.

The responsible committee will decide whether the design specification is needed and in case it is felt necessary, it will decide upon its format and content that is appropriate for the MSS and should set up the necessary organization to carry out the task.

The design specification should typically address the following.

User needs The identification of the users of the standard and their associated needs, together with the costs and benefits for these users.

Scope The scope and purpose of the standard, the title and the field of application.

Compatibility How compatibility within this and with other MSS families will be achieved, including identification of the common elements with similar standards, and how these will be included in the recommended structure (see Appendix 3 to this Annex SL).

Consistency Consistency with other documents (to be) developed within the MSS family.

NOTE Most, if not all of the information on user needs and scope will be available from the justification study.

The design specification should ensure that

- a) the outputs of the justification study are translated correctly into requirements for the MSS,
- b) the issues of compatibility and alignment with other MSS are identified and addressed,
- c) a basis for verification of the final MSS exists at appropriate stages during the development process,
- d) the approval of the design specification provides a basis for ownership throughout the project by the members of the TC/SC(s),
- e) account is taken of comments received through the NWI ballot phase, and
- f) any constraints are taken into account.

Formatted: No bullets or numbering,
Tab stops: 0 cm, Left + Not at 0.71 cm

The Committee developing the MSS should monitor the development of the MSS against the design specification in order to ensure that no deviations happen in the course of the project.

SL.8.2.3 Producing the deliverables

SL.8.2.3.1 Monitoring output

In the drafting process, the output should be monitored for compatibility and ease of use with other MSS, by covering issues such as

- The high-level structure (HLS), identical subclause titles, identical text and common terms and core definitions the need for clarity (both in language and presentation), and
- avoiding overlap and contradiction.

SL.8.2.3.2 Managing deviations

- Any future MSS (new and revisions) shall, in principle, follow the structure and guidance included in the HLS (taking into account the flexibility already proposed in the JTCG recommendations included as Appendices 2 to 4 to this Annex SL). Deviations are permissible on the condition that these are reported to the ISO/TMB through the ISO/TMB Secretary at tmb@iso.org, with detailed rationale
- This means that a deviation in the use of the HLS, already permitted by the JTCG recommendations contained in document (included as Appendices 2 to 4 of this Annex SL), does not need to be reported to the ISO/TMB (adding a clause, insertions, etc.), allowing more flexibility in the implementation.

Formatted: Not Highlight

Formatted: Not Highlight

Formatted: Not Highlight

SL.8.2.4 Transparency of the MSS development process

MSS have a broader scope than most other types of standard. They cover a large field of human endeavour and have an impact on a wide range of user interests.

Committees preparing MSS should accordingly adopt a highly transparent approach to the development of the standards, ensuring that

- possibilities for participation in the process of developing standards are clearly identified, and
- the development processes being used are understood by all parties.

Committees should provide information on progress throughout the life cycle of the project, including

- the status of the project to date (including items under discussion),
- contact points for further information,
- communiqués and press releases on plenary meetings, and
- regular listings of frequently asked questions and answers.

In doing this, account needs to be taken of the distribution facilities available in the participating countries.

Where it may be expected that users of an MSS Type A are likely to demonstrate conformity to it, the MSS shall be so written that conformity can be assessed by a manufacturer or supplier (first party, or self-declaration), a user or purchaser (second party) or an independent body (third party, also known as certification or registration).

Maximum use should be made of the resources of the ISO Central Secretariat to facilitate the transparency of the project and the committee should, in addition, consider the establishment of a dedicated open-access website.

Committees should involve the national member bodies to build up a national awareness of the MSS project, providing drafts as appropriate for different interested and affected parties, including accreditation bodies, certification bodies, enterprises and the user community, together with additional specific information as needed.

The committee should ensure that technical information on the content of the MSS under development is readily available to participating members, especially those in developing countries.

SL.8.2.5 Process for interpretation of a standard

The committee should establish a process to handle interpretation questions related to their standards from the users, and should make the resulting interpretations available to others in an expedient manner. Such a mechanism can effectively address possible misconceptions at an early stage and identify issues that may require improved wording of the standard during the next revision cycle.

Appendix 1 (normative)

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, (Asian) Chinese (PRC), Expanded by 0.4 pt

Justification criteria questions

1. General

Formatted: Font: 12 pt, Bold, French (Switzerland)

Formatted: Font: 12 pt, Bold

The list of questions to be addressed in the justification study are in line with the principles listed in SL.6. This list is not exhaustive. Additional information not covered by the questions should be provided if it is relevant to the case.

Each general principle should be given due consideration and ideally when preparing the JS, the proposer should provide a general rationale for each principle, prior to answering the questions associated with the principle.

The principles the proposer of the MSS should pay due attention to when preparing the justification study are:

1. Market relevance
2. Compatibility
3. Topic coverage
4. Flexibility
5. Free trade
6. Applicability of conformity assessment
7. Exclusions

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.71 cm, No bullets or numbering

NOTE No questions directly refer to the principle 8 "ease of use", but it should guide the development of the deliverable

Formatted: Font: 9 pt

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0 cm, First line: 0 cm, Tab stops: 0 cm, Left + Not at 0.71 cm

Basic information on the MSS proposal

Formatted: Justified, None, Space Before: 0 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate, Tab stops: Not at 0.88 cm + 1.27 cm

1	<u>What is the proposed purpose and scope of the MSS? Is the document supposed to be a guidance document or a document with requirements?</u>
2	<u>Would the proposed MSS work item result in an International Standard (IS), an ISO/IEC Guide, a Technical Specification (TS), a Technical Report (TR), a Publicly Available Specification (PAS), or an International Workshop Agreement (IWA)?</u>
3	<u>Does the proposed purpose or scope include product (including service) specifications, product test methods, product performance levels, or other forms of guidance or requirements directly related to products produced or provided by the implementing organization?</u>
4	<u>Is there one or more existing ISO committee or non-ISO organization that could logically have responsibility for the proposed MSS? If so, identify.</u>
5	<u>Have relevant reference materials been identified, such as existing guidelines or established practices?</u>
6	<u>Are there technical experts available to support the standardization work? Are the technical experts direct representatives of the affected parties from the different geographical regions?</u>

7	<u>What efforts are anticipated as being necessary to develop the document in terms of experts needed and number/duration of meetings?</u>
8	<u>What is the anticipated completion date?</u>
9	<u>Is the MSS intended to be a guidance document, contractual specification or regulatory specification for an organization?</u>

Principle 1: market relevance

10	<p><u>Have all the affected parties been identified? For example:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <u>a) organizations (of various types and sizes): the decision-makers within an organization who approve work to implement and achieve conformance to the MSS;</u> <u>b) customers/end-users, i.e. individuals or parties that pay for or use a product (including service) from an organization;</u> <u>c) supplier organizations, e.g. producer, distributor, retailer or vendor of a product, or a provider of a service or information;</u> <u>d) MSS service provider, e.g. MSS certification bodies, accreditation bodies or consultants;</u> <u>e) regulatory bodies;</u> <u>f) non-governmental organizations.</u>
11	<u>What is the need for this MSS? Does the need exist at a local, national, regional or global level? Does the need apply to developing countries? Does it apply to developed countries? What is the added value of having an ISO document (e.g. facilitating communication between organizations in different countries)?</u>
12	<u>Does the need exist for a number of sectors and is thus generic? If so, which ones? Does the need exist for small, medium or large organizations?</u>
13	<u>Is the need important? Will the need continue? If yes, will the target date of completion for the proposed MSS satisfy this need? Are viable alternatives identified?</u>
14	<u>Describe how the need and importance were determined. List the affected parties consulted and the major geographical or economical regions in which they are located.</u>
15	<u>Is there known or expected support for the proposed MSS? List those bodies that have indicated support. Is there known or expected opposition to the proposed MSS? List those bodies that have indicated opposition.</u>
16	<p><u>What are the expected benefits and costs to organizations, differentiated for small, medium and large organizations if applicable?</u></p> <p><u>Describe how the benefits and the costs were determined. Provide available information on geographic or economic focus, industry sector and size of the organization. Provide information on the sources consulted and their basis (e.g. proven practices), premises, assumptions and conditions (e.g. speculative or theoretical), and other pertinent information.</u></p>
17	<p><u>What are the expected benefits and costs to other affected parties (including developing countries)?</u></p> <p><u>Describe how the benefits and the costs were determined. Provide any information regarding the affected parties indicated.</u></p>

Formatted: None, Indent: Left: 0.71 cm, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate

Formatted Table

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.5 cm, Hanging: 0.7 cm, No bullets or numbering, Tab stops: 0.7 cm, Left

Formatted: Indent: Left: 1 cm

18	What will be the expected value to society?
19	Have any other risks been identified (e.g. timeliness or unintended consequences to a specific business)?

Principle 2: compatibility

20	Is there potential overlap or conflict with other existing or planned ISO or non-ISO international standards, or those at the national or regional level? Are there other public or private actions, guidance, requirements and regulations that seek to address the identified need, such as technical papers, proven practices, academic or professional studies, or any other body of knowledge?
21	Is the MSS or the related conformity assessment activities (e.g. audits, certifications) likely to add to, replace all or parts of, harmonize and simplify, duplicate or repeat, conflict with, or detract from the existing activities identified above? What steps are being considered to ensure compatibility, resolve conflict or avoid duplication?
22	Is the proposed MSS likely to promote or stem proliferation of MSS at the national or regional level, or by industry sectors?

Principle 3: topic coverage

23	Is the MSS for a single specific sector?
24	Will the MSS reference or incorporate an existing, non-industry-specific ISO MSS (e.g. from the ISO 9000 series of quality management standards)? If yes, will the development of the MSS conform to the ISO/IEC Sector Policy (see 6.8.2 of ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2), and any other relevant policy and guidance procedures (e.g. those that may be made available by a relevant ISO committee)?
25	What steps have been taken to remove or minimize the need for particular sector-specific deviations from a generic MSS?

Formatted: None, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate

Principle 4: flexibility

26	Will the MSS allow an organization competitively to add to, differentiate or encourage innovation of its management system beyond the standard?
----	---

Principle 5: free trade

27	How would the MSS facilitate or impact global trade? Could the MSS create or prevent a technical barrier to trade?
28	Could the MSS create or prevent a technical barrier to trade for small, medium or large organizations?
29	Could the MSS create or prevent a technical barrier to trade for developing or developed countries?
30	If the proposed MSS is intended to be used in government regulations, is it likely to add to, duplicate, replace, enhance or support existing governmental regulations?

Principle 6: applicability of conformity

<u>31</u>	<u>If the intended use is for contractual or regulatory purposes, what are the potential methods to demonstrate conformance (e.g. first party, second party or third party)? Does the MSS enable organizations to be flexible in choosing the method of demonstrating conformance, and to accommodate for changes in its operations, management, physical locations and equipment?</u>
<u>32</u>	<u>If third-party registration/certification is a potential option, what are the anticipated benefits and costs to the organization? Will the MSS facilitate joint audits with other management system standards or promote parallel assessments?</u>

Principle 7: exclusions

<u>33</u>	<u>Does the proposed purpose or scope include product (including service) specifications, product test methods, product performance levels, or other forms of guidance or requirements directly related to products produced or provided by the implementing organization?</u>
-----------	--

Formatted: Justified, No bullets or numbering

Appendix 2 (normative)

High level structure, identical core text and common terms and core definitions for use in Management Systems Standards

1. Introduction

The aim of this document is to enhance the consistency and alignment of ISO management system standards by providing a unifying and agreed high level structure, identical core text and common terms and core definitions. The aim being that all ISO management system “requirements” standards are aligned and the compatibility of these standards is enhanced. It is envisaged that individual management systems standard will add additional “discipline-specific” requirements as required.

The intended audience for this document is ISO Technical Committees (TC), Subcommittees (SC) and Project Committees (PC) and others that are involved in the development of management system standards.

This common approach to new management system standards and future revisions of existing standards will increase the value of such standards to users. It will be particularly useful for those organizations that choose to operate a single (sometimes called “integrated”) management system that can meet the requirements of two or more management system standards simultaneously.

Appendix 3 to this Annex SL sets out the high level structure, identical core text and common terms and core definitions that form the nucleus of future and revised ISO Type A management system standards.

Appendix 4 to this Annex SL sets out guidance to the use of Appendix 3 to this Annex SL.

2. Use

ISO management system standards include the high level structure and identical core text as found in Appendix 3 to this Annex SL. The common terms and core definitions are either included or normatively reference an international standard where they are included.

NOTE The high level structure includes the main clauses (1 to 10) and their titles, in a fixed sequence. The identical core text includes numbered sub-clauses (and their titles) as well as text within the sub-clauses

3. Non applicability

If due to exceptional circumstances the high level structure or any of the identical core text, common terms and core definitions cannot be applied in a discipline-specific management system standard then the TC/PC/SC needs to notify ISO/TMB through the ISO/TMB Secretary at tmb@iso.org of the rationale for this and make it available for review by ISO/TMB.

NOTE TC/PC/SC strive to avoid any non-applicability of the high level structure or any of the identical core text, common terms and core definitions.

4. Discipline-specific management system standards – using this document

Discipline-specific text additions are managed as follows.

1. Discipline-specific additions are made by the individual ISO/TC, PC, SC or other group that is developing the specific ISO management system standard.
2. Discipline-specific text does not affect harmonization or contradict or undermine the intent of the high level structure, identical core text, common terms and core definitions.
3. Insert additional sub-clauses, or sub-sub-clauses (etc.) either ahead of an identical text sub-clause (or sub-sub-clause etc.), or after such a sub-clause (etc.) and renumbered accordingly.

NOTE 1 Hanging paragraphs are not permitted – see ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, clause 5.2.4.

NOTE 2 Attention is drawn to the need to check cross referencing.

4. Add or insert discipline-specific text within Appendix 3 to this Annex SL. Examples of additions include:

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, (Asian) Chinese (PRC), Expanded by 0.4 pt

Formatted: Heading 2, Indent: Left: 0.63 cm, Space After: 6 pt, Line spacing: single, No bullets or numbering

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, Font color: Auto, (Asian) Chinese (PRC), (Other) English (U.S.), Expanded by 0.4 pt

Formatted: Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0 cm + Tab after: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 0.63 cm

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0 cm, Hanging: 0.63 cm, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0 cm + Tab after: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 0.63 cm

Formatted: Font: 9 pt, Not Italic

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0 cm, Hanging: 0.63 cm, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0 cm + Tab after: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 0.63 cm

Formatted: Font: 9 pt, Not Italic

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0 cm, Hanging: 0.63 cm, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0 cm + Tab after: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 0.63 cm

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.63 cm, Outline numbered + Level: 2 + Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.75 cm + Tab after: 1.51 cm + Indent at: 1.51 cm, Tab stops: 1.4 cm, List tab + Not at 1.51 cm

Formatted: Font: 9 pt

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.63 cm, Outline numbered + Level: 2 + Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.75 cm + Tab after: 1.51 cm + Indent at: 1.51 cm, Tab stops: 1.4 cm, List tab + Not at 1.51 cm

- new bullet points
- discipline-specific explanatory text (e.g. Notes or Examples), in order to clarify requirements
- discipline-specific new paragraphs to sub-clauses (etc.) within the identical text
- adding text that enhances the existing requirements in Appendix 3 to this Annex SL

5. Avoid repeating requirements between identical core text and discipline-specific text by adding text to the identical core text taking account of point 4.2 above.

6. Distinguish between discipline-specific text and identical core text from the start of the drafting process. This aids identification of the different types of text during the development and balloting stages.

NOTE 1 Distinguishing options include by colour, font, font size, italics, or by being boxed separately etc.

NOTE 2 Identification of distinguishing text is not necessarily carried into the published version.

7. Understanding of the concept of “risk” may be more specific than that given in the definition under 3.09 of Appendix 3 to this Annex SL. In this case a discipline-specific definition may be needed. The discipline-specific terms and definitions are differentiated from the core definition, e.g. (XXX) risk.

NOTE The above can also apply to a number of other definitions.

8. Common terms and core definitions will be integrated into the listing of terms and definitions in the discipline-specific management system standard consistent with the concept system of that standard.

5. Implementation

Follow the sequence, high level structure, identical core text, common terms and core definitions for any new management system standard and for any revisions to existing management system standard.

6. Guidance

Find supporting guidance in Appendix 4 to this Annex SL.

Formatted: Outline numbered + Level: 4 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 1.9 cm + Indent at: 2.54 cm

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.63 cm, Outline numbered + Level: 2 + Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.75 cm + Tab after: 1.51 cm + Indent at: 1.51 cm, Tab stops: 1.4 cm, List tab + Not at 1.51 cm

Formatted: Font: 9 pt, Not Italic

Formatted: Font: 9 pt

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.63 cm, Outline numbered + Level: 2 + Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.75 cm + Tab after: 1.51 cm + Indent at: 1.51 cm, Tab stops: 1.4 cm, List tab + Not at 1.51 cm

Formatted: Font: Not Italic

Formatted: Font: 9 pt, Not Italic

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.63 cm, Outline numbered + Level: 2 + Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.75 cm + Tab after: 1.51 cm + Indent at: 1.51 cm, Tab stops: 1.4 cm, List tab + Not at 1.51 cm

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0 cm, Hanging: 0.63 cm, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0 cm + Tab after: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 0.63 cm

Appendix 3 (normative)

High level structure, identical core text, common terms and core definitions

NOTE In the Identical text proposals, XXX = an MSS discipline specific qualifier (e.g. energy, road traffic safety, IT security, food safety, societal security, environment, quality) that needs to be inserted. Blue italicized text is given as advisory notes to standards' drafters.

Introduction

NOTE Specific to the discipline.

1. Scope

NOTE Specific to the discipline.

2. Normative references

NOTE Clause Title shall be used. Specific to the discipline.

3. Terms and definition

NOTE Clause Title shall be used. Terms and definitions may either be within the standard or in a separate document. To reference Common terms and Core definitions + discipline specific ones.

For the purposes of this document, the following terms and definitions apply.

NOTE 1 The following terms and definitions constitute an integral part of the "common text" for management systems standards. Additional terms and definitions may be added as needed. Notes may be added or modified to serve the purpose of each standard.

NOTE 2 Bold type in a definition indicates a cross-reference to another term defined in this clause, and the number reference for the term is given in parentheses.

NOTE 3 Where the text "XXX" appears throughout this clause, the appropriate reference should be inserted depending on the context in which these terms and definitions are being applied. For example: "an XXX objective" could be substituted as "an information security objective".

3.01

organization

person or group of people that has its own functions with responsibilities, authorities and relationships to achieve its **objectives** (3.08)

Note 1 to entry: The concept of organization includes, but is not limited to sole-trader, company, corporation, firm, enterprise, authority, partnership, charity or institution, or part or combination thereof, whether incorporated or not, public or private.

3.02

interested party (preferred term)

stakeholder (admitted term)

person or **organization** (3.01) that can affect, be affected by, or perceive themselves to be affected by a decision or activity

3.03

requirement

need or expectation that is stated, generally implied or obligatory

NOTE 1 to entry: "Generally implied" means that it is custom or common practice for the organization and interested parties that the need or expectation under consideration is implied.

NOTE 2 to entry: A specified requirement is one that is stated, for example in documented information.

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, (Asian) Chinese (PRC), (Other) English (U.S.), Expanded by 0.4 pt

Formatted: English (U.S.)

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, (Asian) Chinese (PRC), (Other) English (U.S.), Expanded by 0.4 pt

Formatted: English (U.S.)

Formatted: English (U.S.)

Field Code Changed

Field Code Changed

Field Code Changed

Formatted: English (U.S.)

Formatted: Font: Not Italic

Formatted: Font: Bold

Formatted: Font: Not Italic

Formatted: Font: Not Italic

Formatted: Font: Not Italic

Formatted: Font: Not Italic

3.04 **management system**

set of interrelated or interacting elements of an **organization** (3.01) to establish **policies** (3.07) and **objectives** (3.08) and **processes** (3.12) to achieve those objectives

NOTE 1 to entry: A management system can address a single discipline or several disciplines.

NOTE 2 to entry: The system elements include the organization's structure, roles and responsibilities, planning, operation, etc.

NOTE 3 to entry: The scope of a management system may include the whole of the organization, specific and identified functions of the organization, specific and identified sections of the organization, or one or more functions across a group of organizations.

3.05 **top management**

person or group of people who directs and controls an **organization** (3.01) at the highest level

NOTE 1 to entry: Top management has the power to delegate authority and provide resources within the organization.

NOTE 2 to entry: If the scope of the **management system** (3.04) covers only part of an organization then top management refers to those who direct and control that part of the organization.

3.06 **effectiveness**

extent to which planned activities are realized and planned results achieved

3.07 **policy**

intentions and direction of an **organization** (3.01) as formally expressed by its **top management** (3.05)

3.08 **objective**

result to be achieved

NOTE 1 to entry: An objective can be strategic, tactical, or operational.

NOTE 2 to entry: Objectives can relate to different disciplines (such as financial, health and safety, and environmental goals) and can apply at different levels (such as strategic, organization-wide, project, product and process (3.12)).

NOTE 3 to entry: An objective can be expressed in other ways, e.g. as an intended outcome, a purpose, an operational criterion, as an XXX objective or by the use of other words with similar meaning (e.g. aim, goal, or target).

NOTE 4 to entry: In the context of XXX management systems XXX objectives are set by the organization, consistent with the XXX policy, to achieve specific results.

3.09 **risk**

effect of uncertainty

NOTE 1 to entry: An effect is a deviation from the expected — positive or negative.

NOTE 2 to entry: Uncertainty is the state, even partial, of deficiency of information related to, understanding or knowledge of, an event, its consequence, or likelihood.

NOTE 3 to entry: Risk is often characterized by reference to potential **events** (ISO Guide 73, 3.5.1.3) and **consequences** (ISO Guide 73, 3.6.1.3), or a combination of these.

NOTE 4 to entry: Risk is often expressed in terms of a combination of the consequences of an event (including changes in circumstances) and the associated **likelihood** (ISO Guide 73, 3.6.1.1) of occurrence.

3.10 **competence**

ability to apply knowledge and skills to achieve intended results

3.11

documented information

information required to be controlled and maintained by an **organization** (3.01) and the medium on which it is contained

NOTE 1 to entry: Documented information can be in any format and media and from any source.

NOTE 2 to entry: Documented information can refer to

- the **management system** (3.04), including related **processes** (3.12);
- information created in order for the organization to operate (documentation);
- evidence of results achieved (records).

3.12

process

set of interrelated or interacting activities which transforms inputs into outputs

3.13

performance

measurable result

NOTE 1 to entry: Performance can relate either to quantitative or qualitative findings.

NOTE 2 to entry: Performance can relate to the management of activities, **processes** (3.12), products (including services), systems or **organizations** (3.01).

3.14

outsource (verb)

make an arrangement where an external **organization** (3.01) performs part of an organization's function or **process** (3.12)

NOTE 1 to entry: An external organization is outside the scope of the **management system** (3.04), although the outsourced function or process is within the scope.

3.15

monitoring

determining the status of a system, a **process** (3.12) or an activity

NOTE 1 to entry: To determine the status there may be a need to check, supervise or critically observe.

3.16

measurement

process (3.12) to determine a value

3.17

audit

systematic, independent and documented **process** (3.12) for obtaining audit evidence and evaluating it objectively to determine the extent to which the audit criteria are fulfilled

NOTE 1 to entry: An audit can be an internal audit (first party) or an external audit (second party or third party), and it can be a combined audit (combining two or more disciplines).

NOTE 2 to entry: "Audit evidence" and "audit criteria" are defined in ISO 19011.

3.18

conformity

fulfilment of a **requirement** (3.03)

3.19

nonconformity

non-fulfilment of a **requirement** (3.03)

3.20

correction

action to eliminate a detected **nonconformity** (3.19)

3.21

corrective action

action to eliminate the cause of a **nonconformity** (3.19) and to prevent recurrence

3.22

continual improvement

recurring activity to enhance **performance** (3.13)

4. Context of the organization

4.1 Understanding the organization and its context

The organization shall determine external and internal issues that are relevant to its purpose and that affect its ability to achieve the intended outcome(s) of its **XXX** management system.

4.2 Understanding the needs and expectations of interested parties

The organization shall determine

- the interested parties that are relevant to the **XXX** management system, and
- the requirements of these interested parties.

4.3 Determining the scope of the **XXX** management system

The organization shall determine the boundaries and applicability of the **XXX** management system to establish its scope.

When determining this scope, the organization shall consider

- the external and internal issues referred to in 4.1, and
- the requirements referred to in 4.2.

The scope shall be available as documented information.

4.4 **XXX** management system

The organization shall establish, implement, maintain and continually improve an **XXX** management system, including the processes needed and their interactions, in accordance with the requirements of this International Standard.

5. Leadership

5.1 Leadership and commitment

Top management shall demonstrate leadership and commitment with respect to the **XXX** management system by

- ensuring that the **XXX** policy and **XXX** objectives are established and are compatible with the strategic direction of the organization
- ensuring the integration of the **XXX** management system requirements into the organization's business processes
- ensuring that the resources needed for the **XXX** management system are available
- communicating the importance of effective **XXX** management and of conforming to the **XXX** management system requirements

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Not Highlight

Formatted: Font: Bold

Formatted: Font: Bold

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

Formatted: Not Highlight

Formatted: Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt, Line spacing: single

Formatted: Not Highlight

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

- ensuring that the XXX management system achieves its intended outcome(s)
- directing and supporting persons to contribute to the effectiveness of the XXX management system
- promoting continual improvement
- supporting other relevant management roles to demonstrate their leadership as it applies to their areas of responsibility.

NOTE Reference to “business” in this International Standard should be interpreted broadly to mean those activities that are core to the purposes of the organization’s existence.

5.2 Policy

Top management shall establish a XXX policy that

- is appropriate to the purpose of the organization
- provides a framework for setting XXX objectives
- includes a commitment to satisfy applicable requirements, and
- includes a commitment to continual improvement of the XXX management system.

The XXX policy shall

- be available as documented information
- be communicated within the organization
- be available to interested parties, as appropriate.

5.3 Organization roles, responsibilities and authorities

Top management shall ensure that the responsibilities and authorities for relevant roles are assigned and communicated within the organization.

Top management shall assign the responsibility and authority for:

- a) ensuring that the XXX management system conforms to the requirements of this International Standard: and
- b) reporting on the performance of the XXX management system to top management.

6. Planning

6.1 Actions to address risks and opportunities

When planning for the XXX management system, the organization shall consider the issues referred to in 4.1 and the requirements referred to in 4.2 and determine the risks and opportunities that need to be addressed to

- assure the XXX management system can achieve its intended outcome(s)
- prevent, or reduce, undesired effects
- achieve continual improvement.

Formatted: Font: 9 pt, (Asian) Japanese, Not Expanded by / Condensed by

Formatted: Normal, Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 10.5 pt, Tab stops: 1.69 cm, Left

Formatted: Font: 9 pt, (Asian) Japanese

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

The organization shall plan:

a) actions to address these risks and opportunities, and

b) how to

- integrate and implement the actions into its XXX management system processes
- evaluate the effectiveness of these actions.

6.2 XXX objectives and planning to achieve them

The organization shall establish XXX objectives at relevant functions and levels.
The XXX objectives shall

- be consistent with the XXX policy
- be measurable (if practicable)
- take into account applicable requirements
- be monitored
- be communicated, and
- be updated as appropriate.

The organization shall retain documented information on the XXX objectives.

When planning how to achieve its XXX objectives, the organization shall determine

- what will be done
- what resources will be required
- who will be responsible
- when it will be completed
- how the results will be evaluated.

7. Support

7.1 Resources

The organization shall determine and provide the resources needed for the establishment, implementation, maintenance and continual improvement of the XXX management system.

7.2 Competence

The organization shall

- determine the necessary competence of person(s) doing work under its control that affects its XXX performance, and
- ensure that these persons are competent on the basis of appropriate education, training, or experience;
- where applicable, take actions to acquire the necessary competence, and evaluate the effectiveness of the actions taken, and

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, No bullets or numbering, Tab stops: 0 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

— retain appropriate documented information as evidence of competence.

NOTE Applicable actions may include, for example: the provision of training to, the mentoring of, or the re-assignment of currently employed persons; or the hiring or contracting of competent persons.

7.3 Awareness

Persons doing work under the organization's control shall be aware of

- the XXX policy
- their contribution to the effectiveness of the XXX management system, including the benefits of improved XXX performance
- the implications of not conforming with the XXX management system requirements.

7.4 Communication

The organization shall determine the need for internal and external communications relevant to the XXX management system including

- on what it will communicate
- when to communicate
- with whom to communicate.

7.5 Documented information

7.5.1 General

The organization's XXX management system shall include

- documented information required by this International Standard
- documented information determined by the organization as being necessary for the effectiveness of the XXX management system.

NOTE The extent of documented information for a XXX management system can differ from one organization to another due to

- the size of organization and its type of activities, processes, products and services,
- the complexity of processes and their interactions, and
- the competence of persons.

7.5.2 Creating and updating

When creating and updating documented information the organization shall ensure appropriate

- identification and description (e.g. a title, date, author, or reference number)
- format (e.g. language, software version, graphics) and media (e.g. paper, electronic)
- review and approval for suitability and adequacy.

7.5.3 Control of documented information

Documented information required by the XXX management system and by this International Standard shall be controlled to ensure

- it is available and suitable for use, where and when it is needed

Formatted: Font: 9 pt, (Asian) Japanese, Not Expanded by / Condensed by

Formatted: Normal, Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 10.5 pt, Tab stops: 1.69 cm, Left

Formatted: Font: 9 pt, (Asian) Japanese

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

Formatted: Font: 9 pt, (Asian) Japanese, Not Expanded by / Condensed by

Formatted: Normal, Line spacing: At least 10.5 pt, Tab stops: 1.69 cm, Left

Formatted: Font: 9 pt, (Asian) Japanese

Formatted: Font: (Asian) Japanese, Not Expanded by / Condensed by

Formatted: List Paragraph, Line spacing: At least 10.5 pt, Bulleted + Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 1.27 cm, Tab stops: 1.69 cm, Left

Formatted: Font: (Asian) Japanese, Not Expanded by / Condensed by

Formatted: List Paragraph, Line spacing: At least 10.5 pt, Tab stops: 1.69 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

— it is adequately protected (e.g. from loss of confidentiality, improper use, or loss of integrity).

For the control of documented information, the organization shall address the following activities, as applicable

- distribution, access, retrieval and use,
- storage and preservation, including preservation of legibility
- control of changes (e.g. version control)
- retention and disposition

Documented information of external origin determined by the organization to be necessary for the planning and operation of the XXX management system shall be identified as appropriate, and controlled.

NOTE Access implies a decision regarding the permission to view the documented information only, or the permission and authority to view and change the documented information, etc.

8. Operation

8.1 Operational planning and control

The organization shall plan, implement and control the processes needed to meet requirements, and to implement the actions determined in 6.1, by

- establishing criteria for the processes
- implementing control of the processes in accordance with the criteria
- keeping documented information to the extent necessary to have confidence that the processes have been carried out as planned.

The organization shall control planned changes and review the consequences of unintended changes, taking action to mitigate any adverse effects, as necessary.

The organization shall ensure that outsourced processes are controlled.

9. Performance evaluation

9.1 Monitoring, measurement, analysis and evaluation

The organization shall determine

- what needs to be monitored and measured
- the methods for monitoring, measurement, analysis and evaluation, as applicable, to ensure valid results
- when the monitoring and measuring shall be performed
- when the results from monitoring and measurement shall be analysed and evaluated.

The organization shall retain appropriate documented information as evidence of the results.

The organization shall evaluate the XXX performance and the effectiveness of the XXX management system.

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

Formatted: Not Highlight

Formatted: Font: 9 pt, (Asian) Japanese, Not Expanded by / Condensed by

Formatted: Normal, Line spacing: At least 10.5 pt, Tab stops: 1.69 cm, Left

Formatted: Font: 9 pt, (Asian) Japanese

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

9.2 Internal audit

The organization shall conduct internal audits at planned intervals to provide information on whether the XXX management system:

a) conforms to

— the organization's own requirements for its XXX management system

— the requirements of this International Standard;

b) is effectively implemented and maintained.

The organization shall:

a) plan, establish, implement and maintain an audit programme(s), including the frequency, methods, responsibilities, planning requirements and reporting. The audit programme(s) shall take into consideration the importance of the processes concerned and the results of previous audits;

b) define the audit criteria and scope for each audit;

c) select auditors and conduct audits to ensure objectivity and the impartiality of the audit process;

d) ensure that the results of the audits are reported to relevant management, and

e) retain documented information as evidence of the implementation of the audit programme and the audit results.

9.3 Management review

Top management shall review the organization's XXX management system, at planned intervals, to ensure its continuing suitability, adequacy and effectiveness.

The management review shall include consideration of:

a) the status of actions from previous management reviews;

b) changes in external and internal issues that are relevant to the XXX management system;

c) information on the XXX performance, including trends in:

— nonconformities and corrective actions

— monitoring and measurement results, and

— audit results;

d) opportunities for continual improvement.

The outputs of the management review shall include decisions related to continual improvement opportunities and any need for changes to the XXX management system. The organization shall retain documented information as evidence of the results of management reviews.

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0 cm, Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 2 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0.71 cm + Indent at: 1.41 cm, Tab stops: 1.41 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, No bullets or numbering, Tab stops: 0 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, No bullets or numbering, Tab stops: 0 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Tab stops: 0 cm, Left

10. Improvement

10.1 Nonconformity and corrective action

When a nonconformity occurs, the organization shall:

a) react to the nonconformity, and as applicable

- take action to control and correct it, and
- deal with the consequences;

b) evaluate the need for action to eliminate the causes of the nonconformity, in order that it does not recur or occur elsewhere, by

- reviewing the nonconformity
- determining the causes of the nonconformity, and
- determining if similar nonconformities exist, or could potentially occur;

c) implement any action needed;

d) review the effectiveness of any corrective action taken; and

e) make changes to the XXX management system, if necessary.

Corrective actions shall be appropriate to the effects of the nonconformities encountered.

The organization shall retain documented information as evidence of

- the nature of the nonconformities and any subsequent actions taken, and
- the results of any corrective action.

10.2 Continual improvement

The organization shall continually improve the suitability, adequacy and effectiveness of the XXX management system.

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 2 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0.71 cm + Indent at: 1.41 cm, Tab stops: 1.41 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Tab stops: 0 cm, Left

Formatted: Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: Bullet + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm, Tab stops: 0.71 cm, Left

Appendix 4 (informative)

Guidance on high level structure, identical core text, common terms and core definitions

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, (Asian) Chinese (PRC), (Other) English (U.S.), Expanded by 0.4 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, (Asian) Chinese (PRC), (Other) English (U.S.), Expanded by 0.4 pt

Formatted: English (U.S.)

Field Code Changed

Field Code Changed

Field Code Changed

Formatted: English (U.S.)

Formatted: English (U.S.)

General comment

Clarifications or descriptions should be given for phrases such as “as applicable” or “as appropriate”, perhaps in the Introduction

General comment

*When referring to objectives, always use a “qualifier” (e.g. **XXX objectives**; **XXX management system objectives**; **process objectives** etc.)*

General comment

For those standards that address risk, there should be agreement on the positioning of risk assessment and risk treatment text (i.e. should it go in clause 6 or clause 8)

General comment

This High Level Structure and Identical text does not include a clause giving specific requirements for “preventive action”. This is because one of the key purposes of a formal management system is to act as a preventive tool. Consequently, the High Level Structure and Identical text require an assessment of the organization’s “external and internal issues that are relevant to its purpose and that affect its ability to achieve the intended outcome(s)” in clause 4.1, and to “determine the risks and opportunities that need to be addressed to: assure the XXX management system can achieve its intended outcome(s): prevent, or reduce, undesired effects; achieve continual improvement.” in clause 6.1. These two sets of requirements are considered to cover the concept of “preventive action”, and also to take a wider view that looks at risks and opportunities.

Introduction

This content of this clause will be unique to the discipline

1. Scope

a) This will be specific to the discipline with possibly some identical text

b) The Scope should define the “intended outcomes” of the relevant MSS

Use “intended outcome” and not “expected outcome”

- Expected outcome is that “expected” by interested parties

- “Intended Outcome” is that which is “intended” as a result of the application of the standard, or process etc.

Formatted: Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt

Formatted: Left, None, Space Before: 0 pt, After: 0 pt, No bullets or numbering, Don't keep with next, Hyphenate

2. Normative references

The Normative clause title shall be used, even when no references are given, for clause alignment purposes; however the content will be unique to the discipline

3. Terms and definitions

The “Terms and definitions” clause title shall be used.

Terms and definitions may either be within the standard or in a separate standard/document.

<u>The clause should reference the common terms and core definitions + discipline-specific ones</u>	
<u>5.3 Organizational roles, responsibilities and authorities</u> <u>Some MSS disciplines may wish to add a note that: <<Note the role of reporting on the performance of the XXX management system is often assigned to a "Management Representative">></u>	
<u>6.1 Actions to address risks and opportunities</u> <u>Discipline specific standards can define "risk" in terms that are specific to their discipline. ISO 31000 provides a definition of "risk" that some discipline-specific standards can use (see also definition 3.09). Additionally, each discipline should clarify its need for a formal "risk management " approach.</u>	
<u>7.1 Resources</u> <u>Each discipline may need to add a specific Note giving examples of resources</u>	
<u>8. Operation</u> <u>The concept behind this clause is that it applies to an organization's general operations, as well as to the operation of its management system</u>	

Formatted: Not Highlight

Annex SM (normative)

Global relevance of ISO technical work and publications

SM.1 Introduction

The formation of the WTO and the subsequent adoption of the WTO Technical Barriers to Trade Agreement (WTO/TBT), placed an obligation on ISO to ensure that the International Standards it develops, adopts and publishes are globally relevant. In Annex 4, paragraph 10 of the Second Triennial Review of the Agreement, the following criteria state that a globally relevant standard should:

- Effectively respond to regulatory and market needs (in the global marketplace)
- Respond to scientific and technical developments in various countries
- Not distort the market
- Have no adverse effects on fair competition
- Not stifle innovation and technological development
- Not give preference to characteristics or requirements of specific countries or regions when different needs or interests exist in other countries or regions
- Be performance based as opposed to design prescriptive

Hence the development and adoption of an International Standard that fails to meet these requirements is open to being challenged as creating a barrier to free trade.

Noting the need to provide fuller advice to committees on global relevance, and following a request from the ISO Council, the ISO/TMB established a Global Relevance Task Force. This task force and, subsequently, the ISO/TMB have agreed on the set of principles that follows.

SM.2 Terms and definitions

Standard

Document, established by consensus and approved by a recognized body, that provides, for common and repeated use, rules, guidelines or characteristics for activities or their results, aimed at the achievement of the optimum degree of order in a given context.

NOTE Standards should be based on the consolidated results of science, technology and experience, and aimed at the promotion of optimum community benefits.

(ISO/IEC Guide 2, ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2)

International standard

Standard that is adopted by an international standardizing/standards organization and made available to the public.

(ISO/IEC Guide 2, ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2)

International ~~s~~Standard

International standard where the international standards organization is ISO or IEC.
(~~ISO/IEC Guide 2~~, ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2)

Global relevance

required characteristic of an International Standard that it can be used/implemented as broadly as possible by affected industries and other stakeholders in markets around the world.

SM.3 Principles

SM.3.1 The status and meaning of an International Standard shall be respected.

Any International Standard shall respect the above definitions and shall to the extent possible represent a unique international solution. In cases where unique international solutions are not possible for specific provisions of an International Standard at the current time due to legitimate market and essential differences, International Standards may present options to accommodate these differences where justified.

SM.3.2 The commitment to participate in the development of and the feasibility of preparing International Standards shall be demonstrated at the outset of a standards development project.

It is recognized that in some instances various solutions exist to meet unique aspects of the local markets in different regions and countries. With globalization and the unification of markets, these market differences should be minimized over time and evolve into one global market. Simply projecting one solution that accommodates one market (but not others) as the International Standard will not force markets to evolve and coalesce. In such cases, the markets and their related industries will look elsewhere for standards that better accommodate their needs, and ISO will lose its relevance for those markets and industries. Rather than force such a situation, ISO committees should ascertain at the outset of a project whether:

- a globally relevant International Standard presenting one unique international solution in all of its provisions is feasible;
- an International Standard is feasible that presents options in specific provisions to accommodate existing and legitimate market differences where justified; or
- the preparation of a globally relevant International Standard is not feasible and work should not be undertaken in such circumstances.

Additional practical guidance for committee leaders and delegates/experts may be found in the ISO/TMB's Global Relevance Implementation Guidance document.

SM.3.3 Preference shall be given to preparing performance rather than prescriptive standards.

Please note the following: Annex 3 of the WTO/TBT Agreement.

"Wherever appropriate, the standardizing body shall specify standards based on product requirements in terms of performance rather than design or descriptive characteristics."

ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, Clause 4.2 Performance approach (Excerpt) "Whenever possible, requirements shall be expressed in terms of performance rather than design or descriptive characteristics. This approach leaves maximum freedom to technical development. Primarily those characteristics shall be included that are suitable for world-wide (universal) acceptance."

Where necessary, owing to differences in legislation, climate, environment, economies, social conditions, trade patterns, etc., several opinions may be indicated.”

Given these quotations, the use of the performance-based approach is widely recognized as supporting the development of globally relevant ISO standards. In the case of design-based standards, the freedom for further technical innovation is most limited, while performance-based standards provide for maximum freedom for further innovation. However, in practice, there may be cases where inclusion of design requirements for some provisions within a performance-based standard is appropriate. There may also be other cases where development of a completely design-based standard may be appropriate and will result in a globally relevant ISO standard.

Thus, which approach is most appropriate depends on the technical matter in question. Additional practical guidance for committee leaders and delegates/experts may be found in the ISO/TMB's Global Relevance Implementation Guidance document.

SM.3.4 Given existing and legitimate market differences, an International Standard may pass through an evolutionary process, with the ultimate objective being to publish, at a later point, an International Standard that presents one unique international solution in all of its provisions.

Under this principle, a committee may wish to consider how it addresses current and potentially changeable differences in markets (based on factors such as legislation, economies, social conditions, trade patterns, market needs, scientific theories, design philosophies, etc.) in the ISO deliverables it produces.

Additional practical guidance for committee leaders and delegates/experts may be found in the ISO/TMB's Global Relevance Implementation Guidance document.

SM.3.5 Essential differences consistent with Annex 3 to the WTO Agreement on Technical Barriers to Trade can be included in International Standards, but specific rules shall be applied if a committee wishes to introduce such differences and special authorization needs to be given by the ISO/TMB in instances not covered by these rules.

Under this principle, a committee may wish to consider how it addresses essential differences in markets around the world, that is, factors that are not expected to change over time, such as imbedded technological infrastructures, climatic, geographical or anthropological differences.

Additional practical guidance for committee leaders and delegates/experts may be found in the ISO/TMB's Global Relevance Implementation Guidance document.

SM.3.6 Committees can only ensure the global relevance of the International Standards they produce if they are aware of all the factors that may affect a particular standard's global relevance.

Additional practical guidance for committee leaders and delegates/experts may be found in the ISO/TMB's Global Relevance Implementation Guidance document.

Annex SN (normative)

Policy concerning normative references in ISO publications

SN.1 General

The basic rules concerning normative references are given in 6.2.2 of Part 2 of the ISO/IEC Directives.

6.2.2 Normative references

~~This optional element shall give a list of the referenced documents cited (see 6.6.7.5) in the document in such a way as to make them indispensable for the application of the document. For dated references, each shall be given with its year of publication, or, in the case of enquiry or final drafts, with a dash together with a footnote "To be published.", and full title. The year of publication or dash shall not be given for undated references. When an undated reference is to all parts of a document, the publication number shall be followed by the indication "(all parts)" and the general title of the series of parts (i.e. the introductory and main elements, see Annex D).~~

~~In principle, the referenced documents shall be documents published by ISO and/or IEC.~~

~~Documents published by other bodies may be referred to in a normative manner provided that~~

~~g) the referenced document is recognized by the ISO and/or IEC committee concerned as having wide acceptance and authoritative status as well as being publicly available,~~

~~h) the ISO and/or IEC committee concerned has obtained the agreement of the authors or publishers (where known) of the referenced document to its inclusion and to its being made available as required – the authors or publishers will be expected to make available such documents on request,~~

~~i) the authors or publishers (where known) have also agreed to inform the ISO and/or IEC committee concerned of their intention to revise the referenced document and of the points the revision will concern, and~~

~~b) the ISO and/or IEC committee concerned undertakes to review the situation in the light of any changes in the referenced document.~~

~~— The list shall be introduced by the following wording:~~

~~— "The following referenced documents are indispensable for the application of this document. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies."~~

~~— The above wording is also applicable to a part of a multipart document.~~

~~— The list shall not include the following:~~

~~— referenced documents which are not publicly available;~~

~~— referenced documents which are only cited in an informative manner;~~

~~— referenced documents which have merely served as bibliographic or background material in the preparation of the document.~~

Formatted: Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: a, b, c, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0 cm + Tab after: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm

Formatted: List Number, Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: a, b, c, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0 cm + Tab after: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm

Formatted: List Number, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: a, b, c, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0 cm + Tab after: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm

~~— Such referenced documents may be listed in a bibliography (see 6.4.2).~~

~~It needs to be recalled that~~ The provision for making normative reference to, rather than reproducing text from, another document has a number of benefits such as

- reducing unnecessary and duplicative expenses to standards developers, participants, experts and users of standards,
- eliminating redundancy,
- increasing the speed of development while preserving the scope and global relevance of ISO documents.

Formatted: List Number, Space After: 12 pt, Line spacing: At least 11.5 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: a, b, c, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0 cm + Tab after: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 0.71 cm

SN.2 Preference to be given to ISO and IEC publications

The above rules are based, therefore, on the understanding that, whenever it is necessary to make normative reference to another publication, that reference shall preferentially be to the appropriate ISO or IEC publication if it exists. The purpose of this requirement is to ensure the overall consistency and coherence of the full set of ISO and IEC publications. If a committee wishes to make reference to another publication in preference to the corresponding ISO or IEC standard, an exemption must be requested from the ISO Technical Management Board. ~~In this context, it should be noted that when a document is developed under CEN lead under the Vienna Agreement, and the normative references clause consequently refers to ENs or prENs, a normative annex shall be added indicating the references of the technically equivalent ISO or IEC publications where they exist. The ISO or IEC references take precedence over the ENs or prENs for the application of the ISO document.~~

SN.3 Normative references to publications by other organizations

When an appropriate ISO or IEC publication does not exist, publications of other bodies may be referenced normatively.

Note:OTE Normative references to such non-ISO or IEC publications that are accepted and used globally may:

- provide greater flexibility to best serve the specific needs of particular communities or sectors;
- establish a worldwide implementation of ISO standards in cooperation and concert with standards of other bodies, rather than in competition with them.

Formatted: NOTE, Keep with next

Formatted: NOTE, Indent: First line: 0.5 cm, Space After: 0 pt, Line spacing: single, No bullets or numbering, Keep with next

~~The goal is f~~For ISO documents to be market relevant, ~~and thus, in the examination of work needing to be done,~~ ISO committees should consider whether the ISO document may normatively refer to one or more documents already in existence that meet the needs of global users and whose developers agree to any necessary requirements of the IEC/ISO Directives to support such normative references.

~~The above clause of the Directives stipulates a~~ number of conditions that need to be fulfilled.

- The first condition is that the referenced document is recognized by the responsible ISO or IEC committee as having wide acceptance and authoritative status as well as being publicly available. It needs to be stressed that for the end-user it is imperative that any normatively referenced document be publicly available. For this reason, draft documents which have not reached the enquiry stage in ISO or IEC, or an equivalent stage in the case of documents of other organizations, may not be normatively referenced.

Formatted: List Paragraph, Bulleted + Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 1.27 cm

- The second condition is that the authors/publishers have given their agreement to the document being referenced and to its being made available to support the committee's standards development efforts as required. It needs to be recalled that while particular standards may be widely used within particular regions, there may well be cases in which other member bodies would wish to study the document before they are able to

Formatted: List Paragraph

Formatted: List Paragraph, Bulleted + Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 1.27 cm

agree to it being normatively referenced in the proposed ISO publication. For this reason the committee secretariat should obtain a copy of the referenced document and make it available upon request to P-members wishing to review the document to confirm its suitability for normative referencing. Working group conveners and secretariats should endeavour to ensure that such referenced documents are available as soon as possible once the decision has been taken to make reference to them, ideally simultaneously with the authors/publishers giving their agreement to their document being referenced.

The authors/publishers of such referenced documents need also to be aware that, if an ISO member body wishes to adopt an ISO publication as a national publication, then the member body may need to make available a version of any normatively referenced documents in its national language. The authors/publishers of referenced documents will consequently be expected to cooperate with ISO member bodies in such cases.

Formatted: List Paragraph

- The third condition requires the authors/publishers of the referenced document to inform the ISO or IEC committee concerned whenever it is proposed to amend or revise the referenced document, as well as of the points that will be revised or amended. This is to allow the committee (fourth condition) to confirm that the document as revised/amended is still appropriate for referencing in the ISO or IEC publication and if necessary to allow amendment of the ISO or IEC publication to refer to the revised/amended edition of the referenced document.

Formatted: List Paragraph, Bulleted +
Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0.63 cm +
Indent at: 1.27 cm

As a matter of policy, ISO does not require normatively referenced non-ISO or non-IEC documents to be transposed into ISO or IEC publications. Nevertheless, when it is proposed to revise a document that is normatively referenced in an ISO publication, the authors/publishers are encouraged to consider the possibility of offering the revision to ISO. If, in other circumstances,, a committee sees merit in transposition, rather than normative referencing, of another document, it shall seek the agreement of the authors/publishers of the referenced document. Any unilateral action would essentially constitute copyright infringement which could potentially lead to litigation.

Formatted: List Paragraph

NOTE In the past, a number of ISO committees are reported to have adopted policies of making normative reference ONLY to ISO or IEC publications. The [ISO](#) Technical Management Board has ruled that such policies shall be withdrawn.

Annex SO (informative)

Principles for developing ISO and IEC Standards related to or supporting public policy initiatives

SO.1 Background Context

The 2007 ISO General Assembly Open Session on International Standards and Public Policy addressed important dynamics confronting the ISO community – the relationship between ISO standards and public policy as well as the unique needs and concerns of one major class of ISO standards users, namely, governments. ISO's sister organization IEC, responsible for electrotechnical standardization, applauds the initiative and wishes to co-operate with ISO to develop common ISO/IEC principles and guidance to technical committees of both organizations. It is a reasonable goal that ISO and IEC wish to make their portfolio of standards more visible to public authorities and, equally important, ensure that its standards address the relevant needs and concerns of the public authorities. This will support their global relevance and applicability worldwide, as it has been shown that ISO and IEC standards are capable of providing valuable support to the implementation of public policy. ISO and IEC have been and will continue to be effective providers of voluntary standards that support the programs of government authorities, who need standards that meet the WTO TBT criteria and that support technical regulations and/or procurement actions.

It should be noted that, as private, voluntary organizations, ISO and IEC themselves are not directly representative of government interests. ISO and IEC consensus on ISO and IEC standards reflects agreement across a range of stakeholders at the standard drafting level, AND it reflects a consensus across national standards bodies at the approval level. National positions on ISO or IEC standards are not necessarily government positions, although government experts may participate in developing these positions with their counterparts from the private sector.

The following set of principles has been established to guide ISO and IEC committees developing standards related to or supporting public policy initiatives. These principles will ensure that ISO and IEC standards can properly support and be used by public authorities.

SO.2 Principles

- | **a)** ISO and IEC are committed to creating market-driven International Standards, based on objective information and knowledge on which there is global consensus, and not on subjective judgments, in order to provide credible technical tools that can support the implementation of regulation and public policy initiatives.
- | **b)** ISO and IEC are committed to developing International Standards that are market relevant, meeting the needs and concerns of all relevant stakeholders including public authorities where appropriate, without seeking to establish, drive or motivate public policy, regulations, or social and political agendas.

Formatted: Outline numbered +
Level: 1 + Numbering Style: a, b, c, ...
+ Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left +
Aligned at: 0 cm + Tab after: 0.63 cm
+ Indent at: 0.71 cm

When ISO or IEC standards are anticipated to support a public policy initiative, the relationship between the standard(s) and the public policy initiative(s) should be clearly understood among all concerned parties. The interaction of standardization and public policy or regulation should be anticipated and the intervention of the public authorities in the standards development process should occur as early as possible. It should be noted that in many cases experts representing regulatory authorities are actively participating in the development of ISO and IEC International Standards both as members of the relevant

international committees and/or at the pertinent national mirror committees to ISO and IEC technical bodies.

h)c) ISO and IEC recognize that the development of regulation, public policy and/or the development and interpretation of international treaties are the role of governments or treaty organizations.

m)d) ISO and IEC standards supporting regulation, regulatory cooperation and public policy are best developed within ISO and IEC structures and under operational approaches and participation models that have been proven successful and that are detailed in the ISO/IEC Directives.

Formatted: Outline numbered +
Level: 1 + Numbering Style: a, b, c, ...
+ Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left +
Aligned at: 0 cm + Tab after: 0.63 cm
+ Indent at: 0.71 cm

The use of special committee structures, procedures or participation models may compromise the credibility and suitability of the resulting ISO/IEC standards supporting regulation and public policy.

SO.3 Implementation

- In addition to promoting these principles to ISO and IEC committees, their leaders and participants, ISO and IEC shall actively support and promote the principles for international standardization established in the WTO TBT Agreement and subsequent decisions of the TBT Committee regarding the development of International Standards.
- ISO member bodies and IEC National Committees should ensure that national governments, including their trade representatives, are aware of ISO's and IEC's portfolios, are informed about ISO and IEC as venues for standards development, and are engaged in ISO and IEC standards development whenever appropriate to reduce misunderstanding and inadvertent contradictions.
- The ISO Technical Management Board and the IEC Standardization Management Board should develop additional implementation guidance and case studies of successful ISO and IEC standards efforts that support public policy initiatives (for example, ISO standards related to medical devices and greenhouse gas emissions, and IEC standards related to radio interference, safety of household appliances, ships and marine technology).

Annex SP (normative)

Environmental management – Sector, aspect and element policy

SP.1 Any ISO technical committee or subcommittee that proposes development of a sector-, aspect- or element-specific environmental management standard (see SP. 6 below for definitions) shall clearly demonstrate its market relevance and alignment through the completion of appropriate ISO project approval procedures, including:

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, Bold, (Asian) Japanese, (Other) English (U.K.)

- ISO Form 4, *New Work Item Proposal* for sector-, aspect- or element-specific specific application of generic environmental management system standards, environmental labeling, life-cycle assessment and greenhouse gas management standards, and
- Annex SL *Proposals for management system standards* for sector-, aspect- or element-specific specific application of generic environmental management system standards.

Formatted: Font: Italic

Approval documentation should include specific justification as to why the relevant generic ISO 14000 series standard(s) insufficiently address sector-, aspect- or element-specific needs and how the proposed new standard would effectively resolve identified issues. Proposers should critically assess whether additional sector-, aspect- or element-specific requirements are needed as opposed to the provision of additional guidance to the generic environmental management standard(s).

SP.2 Any ISO technical committee or subcommittee that proposes development of a sector-, aspect- or element-specific environmental management standard should consider and reflect the needs of developing countries, economies in transition, small- and medium- enterprises and organizations operating across a variety of sectors:

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, Bold, (Asian) Japanese, (Other) English (U.K.)

SP.3 ISO/TC 207 will cooperate in or, where appropriate and as decided by the ISO Technical Management Board, lead joint projects with ISO technical committees or subcommittees developing sector-, aspect- or element-specific environmental management standards to avoid duplication of effort and promote consistency and alignment. There is no intention to restrict the development of market relevant standards in committees outside of ISO/TC 207.

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, Bold, (Asian) Japanese, (Other) English (U.K.)

SP.4 ISO technical committees or subcommittees developing sector-, aspect- or element-specific environmental management standards shall:

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, Bold, (Asian) Japanese, (Other) English (U.K.)

- include the normative reference of the appropriate generic ISO 14000 series environmental management systems, environmental labeling, life-cycle assessment and greenhouse gas management standards;
- include the normative reference of the appropriate generic ISO 14050 terms and definitions;
- distinguish ISO 14000 series text if it is reproduced; and
- not interpret, change, or subtract from the requirements of the generic ISO 14000 series environmental management systems, environmental labeling, life-cycle assessment and greenhouse gas management standards; and

SP.5 Any requests for guidance on this sector-, aspect- or element-specific policy or for interpretation of generic ISO 14000 series standards or ISO 14050 terms and definitions shall be submitted to the ISO Central Secretariat.

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, Bold, (Asian) Japanese, (Other) English (U.K.)

SP.6 Terms and definitions**SP.6.1****Sector-specific environmental management standard**

- Standard that provides additional requirements or guidance for the application of a generic environmental management standard to a specific economic or business sector; for example the application of an environmental management system (ISO 14001) or life-cycle assessment (ISO 14044) to agri-food or energy sectors.

SP.6.2**Aspect-specific environmental management standard**

- Standard that provides additional requirements or guidance for the application of a generic environmental management standard for a specific environmental aspect or aspects within its scope; for example the application of an environmental management system (ISO 14001) for greenhouse gas (aspect) management or life-cycle assessment (ISO 14044) for the water (aspect) footprint of products.

SP.6.3**Element-specific environmental management standard**

- Standard that provides additional requirements or guidance for the application of a generic environmental management standard for a specific element or elements within its scope; for example communications or emergency management (elements) within an environmental management system (ISO 14001) or data collection or critical review (elements) within a life-cycle assessment (ISO 14044).

SP.6.4**"Generic" standard**

- Standard designed to be widely applicable across economic sectors, various types and sizes of organizations and diverse geographical, cultural and social conditions

SP.6.5**Standard**

- International Standard, including requirement standards (e.g. Type A management systems standards) or guidance standard (e.g. Type B management system standards).

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, Bold, (Asian) Japanese, (Other) English (U.K.)

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, Bold, (Asian) Japanese, (Other) English (U.K.)

Formatted: Font: Bold

Formatted: Space After: 0 pt, Keep with next, Keep lines together

Formatted: Font: Bold

Formatted: Space After: 0 pt

Formatted: Font: Bold, English (U.K.)

Formatted: Font: Bold, English (U.K.)

Formatted: Font: Bold

Formatted: Font: Bold

Formatted: Indent: Left: 1.27 cm, Space After: 0 pt, No bullets or numbering

Formatted: Font: Bold

Formatted: Space After: 0 pt

Formatted: Font: Bold

Formatted: Space After: 0 pt, No bullets or numbering

Formatted: Font: Bold

Formatted: Space After: 0 pt

Formatted: English (U.S.)

Annex SQ (normative)

Selection criteria for people leading the technical work

SQ.1 Obligations of member bodies

Member bodies⁹ are responsible for ensuring that candidates for leadership positions (i.e. chairs, convenors, and secretaries) meet the requirements contained in SQ.3. Member bodies are also responsible for ensuring that any identified gaps in skills or knowledge of the selected leaders, as well as experts, are identified and filled through ongoing training.

Formatted: Font: Not Bold

SQ.2 Resources available to fill gaps in skills or knowledge

A number of resources are available to help member bodies fill any identified gaps in skills or knowledge:

- Training and other materials are available from the ISO Central Secretariat to ensure the effectiveness of the various roles in conducting/attending meetings, including understanding key concepts.
- To help train experts, it may be useful to schedule committee pre-sessions and information on existing resources before or in conjunction with committee plenaries.
- The support of the Technical Programme Manager, particularly in the case of new committees, is available to train leaders and experts. In the case of new committees, the Technical Programme Manager should attend the first meeting to provide an overall introduction of ISO and its processes.
- Exchange programmes could also be organized between member bodies or with the ISO Central Secretariat. Member bodies may also wish to consider twinnings.
- The services of an external facilitator for coaching and training could be considered as one of the options to assist the committee leadership to develop non-ISO specific skills, such as the skills needed to run effective meetings, general leadership skills, etc.

Formatted: List Paragraph, Indent: Left: 0 cm, Bulleted + Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 1.27 cm

Formatted: List Paragraph, Indent: Left: 0 cm, Bulleted + Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 1.27 cm

Formatted: List Paragraph, Indent: Left: 0 cm, Bulleted + Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 1.27 cm

Formatted: List Paragraph, Indent: Left: 0 cm, Bulleted + Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 1.27 cm

Formatted: List Paragraph, Indent: Left: 0 cm, Bulleted + Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 1.27 cm

SQ.3 Selection Criteria for people leading the technical work

The success of any committee or working group is dependent on its leadership. This selection criteria applies to committee⁹ chairs, working group convenors and committee secretaries. Members bodies are therefore required to apply this criteria when nominating people to these roles in order to ensure that the new ISO Code of Conduct for the technical work is upheld and that the ISO/IEC Directives are correctly applied.

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Justified

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, Bold, No underline, Font color: Auto, English (U.K.)

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

⁹ Technical Committees, Subcommittees, Project Committees

SQ.3.1 Chairs and convenors:

SQ.3.1.1 Competencies and attributes of good chairs and convenors:

- existing role and good reputation in the sector
- relevant professional experience with previous experience of chairmanship
- lead and inspire delegates and experts from the sector towards consensus
- understand the international nature of ISO's work and its resulting benefits
- commit time and resources to their role
- develop solutions through innovative and creative thinking in a consensus environment
- act proactively and communicate diplomatically
- foster and value cooperation with other ISO and IEC Committees and partners including those from regulatory bodies
- act in a purely international capacity

Formatted: a4, Keep lines together

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Bulleted + Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.63 cm, Keep with next, Keep lines together

Formatted: Bulleted + Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.63 cm

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

SQ.3.1.2 Job specification for chairs and convenors:

- Lead meetings effectively with a view to reaching agreement and to ensure that positions and decisions are clearly understood
- ensure that all positions and views (at meetings and by correspondence) are given equal treatment
- manage projects according to agreed target dates in accordance with the project plan from preparation to completion
- work to ensure that a full range of technical competence is available to the group
- be fully knowledgeable of the subject and market needs
- propose decisions to progress or to stop work on the basis of its market or global relevance
- have basic knowledge of ISO and its procedures

Formatted: a4

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Bulleted + Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.63 cm

SQ.3.1.3 Additionally - chairs of committees are required to:

- take responsibility for the overall management of the committee, including any subcommittees and working groups
- advise the ISO Technical Management Board on important matters relating to the Committee
- ensure that the policy and strategic decisions of the ISO Technical Management Board are implemented by the Committee
- think strategically to promote ISO's work in the sector

Formatted: a4

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Bulleted + Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.63 cm

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

SQ.3.1.4 Supporting information

The following information should be considered by the member bodies in the nominations for chairs and convenors:

- current role in the sector
- education
- professional career

Formatted: a4

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Bulleted + Level: 1 + Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.63 cm

- leadership experience
- similar activities
- language skills

SQ.3.2 Secretaries and secretariats

SQ.3.2.1 Selection of secretaries and secretariats

The success of an ISO committee is dependent on its secretariat and secretary. The following list is based on the ISO/IEC Directives and shows the tasks expected to be performed in these roles. ISO Members should use this list when appointing organizations and professionals as secretariats and secretaries.

SQ.3.2.2 Good documents:

Preparing drafts for the committee, arranging for their distribution and the treatment of the comments received. Preparing of drafts, text and figures for circulation by ISO Central Secretariat (ISO/CS) for enquiry and final draft International Standards or for publication. Fulfilling the ISO/CS submission requirements of such documents when sending them.

SQ.3.2.3 Excellent project management

Assisting in the establishment of priorities and target dates for each project. Notifying the names of all working group convenors and project leaders to the ISO Central Secretariat. Initiating ballots. Proposing proactive solutions for projects that are running significantly overtime, and/or which appear to lack sufficient support.

SQ.3.2.4 Well prepared meetings

Establishing the agenda and arranging for its distribution as well as the distribution of all documents on the agenda, including reports of working groups, and indicating all other documents which are necessary for discussion during the meeting. Recording the decisions taken in a meeting and making these decisions available in writing for confirmation in the meeting. Preparing the minutes of meetings to be circulated in a timely manner after the meeting.

SQ.3.2.5 Good advice on ISO processes

Providing advice to the chair, project leaders, and convenors on the ISO/IEC Directives and in particular the procedures associated with the progression of projects. Contacting any subcommittees and working group regarding their activities.

SQ.3.2.6 Connecting and networking

Working in close liaison with the chair of the committee. Maintaining close contact with the ISO Central Secretariat and with the members of the committee regarding its activities. Maintaining close contact with the secretary of any parent committee.

SQ.3.2.7 Proactive follow up of actions

Ensuring that all actions agreed at meetings or by correspondence are completed on time and in a transparent manner.

SQ.3.2.8 Good with IT

Appropriate knowledge and capabilities in using MS Word based drafting tools and the ISO web-based applications including Livelink-e-committees, the committee balloting application and the submission interface.

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted

Formatted: a4

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted

Formatted: a4, Space After: 0 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0 cm

Formatted

Formatted: a4, Space After: 0 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0 cm

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted

Formatted: a4, Space After: 0 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0 cm

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted

Formatted: a4, Space After: 0 pt

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0 cm

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted

Formatted: a4, Space After: 0 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0 cm

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted

Formatted: a4, Space After: 0 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0 cm

Formatted

Formatted: a4, Space After: 0 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0 cm

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

SQ.3.2.9 Supporting Information

The following information should be considered by the member body when appointing secretaries:

- education
- professional career
- experience in standardization work
- participation in training programmes on standardization
- experience with ISO's IT tools and IT infrastructure
- language skills

Formatted: Font: 10 pt, Not Italic,
Font color: Auto, (Asian) Japanese

Formatted: a4, Line spacing: single,
Tab stops: Not at 0.75 cm + 2.25 cm
+ 7.5 cm

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Font: 10 pt

Formatted: Bulleted + Level: 1 +
Aligned at: 0 cm + Indent at: 0.63 cm

Annex SR (normative)

Statements intended to limit the purpose or use of deliverables

SR.1 Principles

The ISO Technical Management Board adopted the following ISO/TMB Resolution 8/2012 regarding statements intended to limit the purpose or use of deliverables:

Noting that ISO Council Resolution 9/2001 confirms ISO's compliance with the basic principles of the operation and implementation of the WTO Agreement on Technical Barriers to Trade (TBT),

Agrees that statements intended to limit the purpose or use of deliverables in relation to barriers or obstacles to trade are not permitted,

Further agrees that statements relating to contractual obligations or government regulation are also not permitted,

Requests that any such statements be removed during the development of a deliverable (i.e. before the close of the DIS) and that any such statements in existing deliverables be removed when the deliverable is revised,

Requires that any exceptions to the above in exceptional cases be approved by the ISO/TMB (...)

SR.2 Further information regarding statements in relation to barriers or obstacles to trade

Various statements intended to limited purpose or use of deliverables (sometimes referred to as "disclaimers") in relation to barriers or obstacles to trade are included in a number of ISO deliverables. Though the wording differs slightly from case to case, they make the point that the deliverable in question is not intended to create barriers or obstacles to trade.

As explained on the ISO/IEC Information Centre, the Agreement on Technical Barriers to Trade (TBT) is one of the legal texts of the WTO Agreement. It obliges WTO Members to ensure that, *inter alia*, voluntary standards do not create unnecessary obstacles to trade. Specifically, Annex 3 of the TBT entitled *Code of Good Practice for the Preparation, Adoption and Application of Standards* (para. E) states: "The standardizing body shall ensure that standards are not prepared, adopted or applied with a view to or with the effect of, creating unnecessary obstacles to international trade."

Standardizing bodies within the territory of a WTO Member can notify their acceptance of the TBT. A list is available of the standardizing bodies from the countries that have notified their acceptance. In accordance with the TBT, the onus is then on WTO Members to ensure that the TBT is respected within their respective territories.

The obligation to avoid obstacles to trade is therefore amply covered in the TBT. To add a TBT disclaimer in some standards but not in others creates two classes of standards with no clear difference between the two. In fact, if the practice were allowed to continue, this could inadvertently create the impression that there are two different levels of compliance with the TBT.

Formatted: English (U.K.)

Formatted: Font: Not Bold, English (U.K.)

Formatted: a2

Formatted: Justified, Indent: Left: 0.5 cm

Formatted: English (U.K.)

Formatted: a2

Formatted: Font: Not Bold, English (U.K.)

Formatted: Font: Not Italic

In addition, the issue of ISO's general compliance with the basic principles of the operation and implementation of the TBT was considered by the ISO Council. By way of ISO Council Resolution 9/2001, the ISO Council confirmed that ISO was indeed compliant in this regard.

SR.3 Further information regarding statements in relation to contractual obligations or government regulation

ISO/TMB Resolution 8/2012 reinforces the application of clause 6.3.3 of the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2 which states that "Contractual requirements (concerning claims, guarantees, covering of expenses, etc.) and legal or statutory requirements shall not be included."

SR.4 Requests for exceptions

Requests for exceptions to include a statement intended to limit the purpose or use of deliverables must be approved by the ISO Technical Management Board who will carefully consider such requests on a case by case basis.

Formatted: English (U.K.)

Formatted: a2

Formatted: Font: Not Bold, English (U.K.)

Formatted: a2

Formatted: English (U.K.)

Formatted: English (U.K.)

Reference documents

Formatted: No bullets or numbering

Formatted Table

The following are links to reference documents for the ISO technical community on a number of important subjects.

- [Guidance for ISO national standards bodies – engaging stakeholders and building consensus \(http://www.iso.org/iso/guidance_nsb.pdf\)](http://www.iso.org/iso/guidance_nsb.pdf)
- [Guidance for liaisons organizations – engaging stakeholders and building consensus \(http://www.iso.org/iso/guidance_liaison-organizations.pdf\)](http://www.iso.org/iso/guidance_liaison-organizations.pdf)
- [Using and references ISO and IEC standards for technical regulation \(http://www.iso.org/iso/standards_for_technical_regulations.pdf\)](http://www.iso.org/iso/standards_for_technical_regulations.pdf)
- [ISO's global relevance policy \(http://www.iso.org/iso/standards_development/governance_of_technical_work/global_relevance_policy.htm\)](http://www.iso.org/iso/standards_development/governance_of_technical_work/global_relevance_policy.htm)
- [Registration Authorities – Guidelines for committees \(http://www.iso.org/iso/standards_development/processes_and_procedures/iso_iec_directives_and_iso_supplement.htm\)](http://www.iso.org/iso/standards_development/processes_and_procedures/iso_iec_directives_and_iso_supplement.htm)
- [ISO Code of Conduct for the technical work and suggestions for implementation \(http://www.iso.org/iso/standards_development/governance_of_technical_work.htm\)](http://www.iso.org/iso/standards_development/governance_of_technical_work.htm)
- [ISO Policy for the protection of ISO's intellectual property \(ISO/GEN 09\) \(http://isodoc.iso.org/livelink/livelink/fetch/4601272/4601279/Pocosa/pdf/GEN_9.pdf?Redirect=1\)](http://isodoc.iso.org/livelink/livelink/fetch/4601272/4601279/Pocosa/pdf/GEN_9.pdf?Redirect=1)
- [ISO Guide 69:1999 Harmonized Stage Code system \(Edition 2\) — Principles and guidelines for use http://isotc.iso.org/livelink/livelink/fetch/2000/2122/3146825/4229629/4230450/8389141/ISO_Guide_69_1999%28E%29.pdf?nodeid=8388173&vernum=-2](http://isotc.iso.org/livelink/livelink/fetch/2000/2122/3146825/4229629/4230450/8389141/ISO_Guide_69_1999%28E%29.pdf?nodeid=8388173&vernum=-2)
- [Guidelines for the preparation and submission of texts \(http://www.iso.org/iso/standards_development/processes_and_procedures/drafting_standards/guidelines_for_the_preparation_and_submission_of_texts.htm\)](http://www.iso.org/iso/standards_development/processes_and_procedures/drafting_standards/guidelines_for_the_preparation_and_submission_of_texts.htm)
- [Guidelines for the preparation and submission of graphics \(http://www.iso.org/iso/standards_development/processes_and_procedures/drafting_standards/guidelines_for_the_preparation_and_submission_of_graphics.htm\)](http://www.iso.org/iso/standards_development/processes_and_procedures/drafting_standards/guidelines_for_the_preparation_and_submission_of_graphics.htm)
- [Model manuscript of a draft International Standard \(known as "The Rice Model"\) \(http://www.iso.org/iso/rice_model\)](http://www.iso.org/iso/rice_model)
- [Guidelines for TC/SC Chairmen and Secretariats for implementation of the Agreement on technical cooperation between ISO and CEN \(Vienna Agreement\) \(http://isotc.iso.org/livelink/livelink/fetch/2000/2122/3146825/4229629/4230450/4230458/02_Guidelines_for_TC_SC_Chairmen_and_Secretariats_on_the_implementation_of_the_Vienna_Agreement.pdf?nodeid=4230689\)](http://isotc.iso.org/livelink/livelink/fetch/2000/2122/3146825/4229629/4230450/4230458/02_Guidelines_for_TC_SC_Chairmen_and_Secretariats_on_the_implementation_of_the_Vienna_Agreement.pdf?nodeid=4230689)

- Regional or national adoption of International Standards and other International Deliverables — Part 1: Adoption of International Standards
([http://isotc.iso.org/livelink/livelink/fetch/2000/2122/3146825/4229629/4230450/8389141/ISO IEC Guide 21-1 2005.pdf?nodeid=8389160&vernum=-2](http://isotc.iso.org/livelink/livelink/fetch/2000/2122/3146825/4229629/4230450/8389141/ISO%20IEC%20Guide%2021-1%202005.pdf?nodeid=8389160&vernum=-2))
- Regional or national adoption of International Standards and other International Deliverables — Part 2: Adoption of International Deliverables other than International Standards
([http://isotc.iso.org/livelink/livelink/fetch/2000/2122/3146825/4229629/4230450/8389141/ISO IEC Guide 21-2 2005.pdf?nodeid=8388832&vernum=-2](http://isotc.iso.org/livelink/livelink/fetch/2000/2122/3146825/4229629/4230450/8389141/ISO%20IEC%20Guide%2021-2%202005.pdf?nodeid=8388832&vernum=-2))